



CIHM/ICMH Collection de microfiches.



Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques



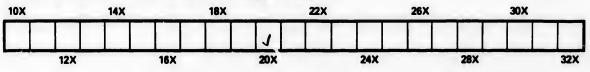
#### Technical and Bibliographic Notes/Notes techniques et bibliographiques

The Institute has attempted to obtain the best original copy available for filming. Features of this copy which may be bibliographically unique, which may alter any of the images in the reproduction, or which may significantly change the usual mathod of filming, are checked balow.

L'Institut a microfilmé le meilleur exemplaire qu'il lui a été possible de se procurer. Les détails de cet exemplaire qui sont peut-être uniques du point de vue bibliographique, qui peuvent modifier une image reproduite, ou qui peuvent exiger une modification dans la méthode normale de filmage sont indiqués ci-dessous.

	Coloured covers/	Coloured pages/	
	Couverture de couleur	Pages de couleur	0
	Covers damaged/	Pages damaged/	be
	Couverturs endommagée	Pages endommagées	th
			ot
	Covers restored and/or laminated/	Pages restored and/or laminated/	fir
	Couverture restaurée et/ou pelliculée	Pages restaurées et/ou pelliculées	si
	Cover title missing/	Pages discoloured, stained or foxed/	1
	Le titre de couverture manque	Pages décolorées, tachetées ou piquées	1
	Coloured maps/ Cartes géographiques en couleur	Pages detached/ Pages détachées	TP
-	Cartes geographiques en coulour		sh
	Coloured ink (i.e. other than blue or black)/	Showthrough/	TI
	Encre de couleur (i.e. autre que bleue ou noire)	Transparence	
	Coloured plates and/or illustrations/	Quality of print varies/	M
	Planches et/ou illustrations en couleur	Qualité inégale de l'impression	di
			be
	Bound with other material/ Relié avec d'autres documents	includes supplementary material/	riç
	Nelle avec à autres documents	Comprend du matériel supplémentaire	re
	Tight binding may cause shadows or distortion	Only edition available/	
	slong interior margin/	Seule édition disponible	-
	La reliure serrée peut causer de l'ombre ou de la distortion le long de la marge intérieure		1
		Pages wholly or partially obscured by errata slips, tissues, etc., have been refilmed to	ł
	Blank leaves added during restoration may	ensure the best possible image/	
	appear within the text. Whenever possible, these have been omitted from filming/	Les pages totalement ou partiellement	
	ll se peut que certaines pages blanches ajoutées	obscurcies par un feuillet d'errata, une pelure, etc., ont été filmées à nouveau de façon à	
	lors d'une restauration apparaissent dans le texte,	obtenir la meilleure image possible.	
	meis, lorsque cele était possible, ces pages n'ont pes été filmées.		
	has are initials.		
	Additional comments:/		
	Commentaires supplémentaires:		

This item is filmed at the reduction ratio checked below/ Ce document est filmé au teux de réduction indiqué ci-dessous.



The to th

> The pose of th filmi

rig igi . on the st on ill

18 al INU hic

ap ffe nti g ghi qu eti re Iétails Is du modifier Ier une Tilmage

88

errata d to

t a pelure, ;on à

32X

The copy filmed here has been reproduced thanks to the generosity of:

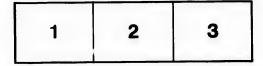
**National Library of Canada** 

The images appearing here are the best quality possible considering the condition and legibility of the original copy and in keeping with the filming contract specifications.

Original copies in printed paper covers are filmed beginning with the front cover and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression, or the back cover when appropriate. All other original copies are filmed beginning on the first page with a printed or illustrated impression, and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression.

The last recorded frame on each microfiche shall contain the symbol  $\longrightarrow$  (meaning "CON-TINUED"), or the symbol  $\nabla$  (meaning "END"), whichever applies.

Maps, plates, charts, etc., may be filmed at different reduction ratios. Those too large to be entirely included in one exposure are filmed beginning in the upper left hand corner, left to right and top to bottom, as many frames as required. The following diagrams illustrate the method:



L'exemplaire filmé fut reproduit grâce à la générosité de:

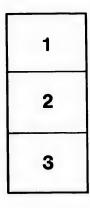
Bibliothèque nationale du Canada

Les images suivantes ont été reproduites avec le plus grand soin, compte tenu de la condition et de la netteté de l'exemplaire filmé, et en conformité avec les conditions du contrat de filmage.

Les exemplaires originaux dont la couverture en papier est imprimée sont filmés en commençant par le premier plat et en terminant soit par la dernière page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration, soit par le second plat, selon le cas. Tous les autres exemplaires originaux sont filmés en commençant par la première page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration et en terminant par la dernière page qui comporte une telle empreinte.

Un des symboles suivants apparaîtra sur la dernière image de chaque microfiche, selon le cas: le symbole  $\longrightarrow$  signifie "A SUIVRE", le symbole  $\nabla$  signifie "FIN".

Les cartes, planches, tableaux, etc., peuvent être filmés à des taux de réduction différents. Lorsque le document est trop grand pour être reproduit en un seul cliché, il est filmé à partir de l'angle supérieur gauche, de gauche à droite, et de haut en bas, en prenant le nombre d'images nécessaire. Les diagrammes suivants illustrent la méthode.



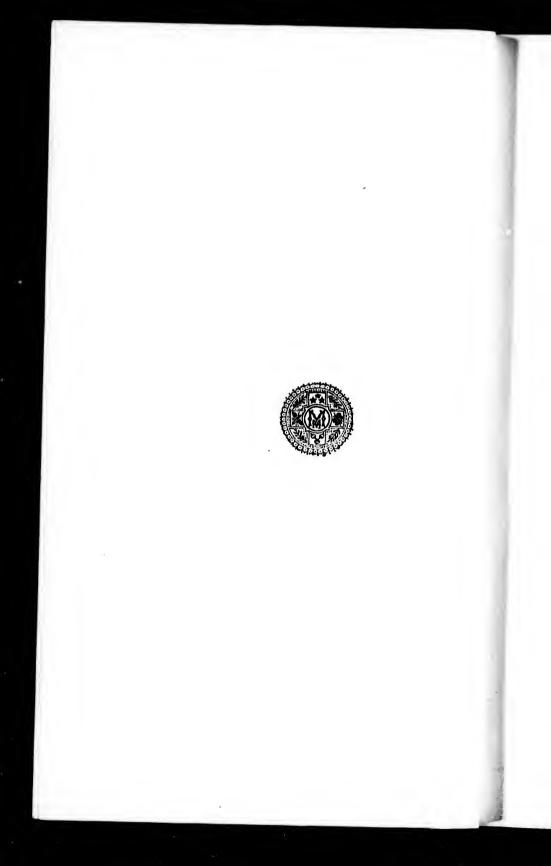
1	2	3
4	5	6

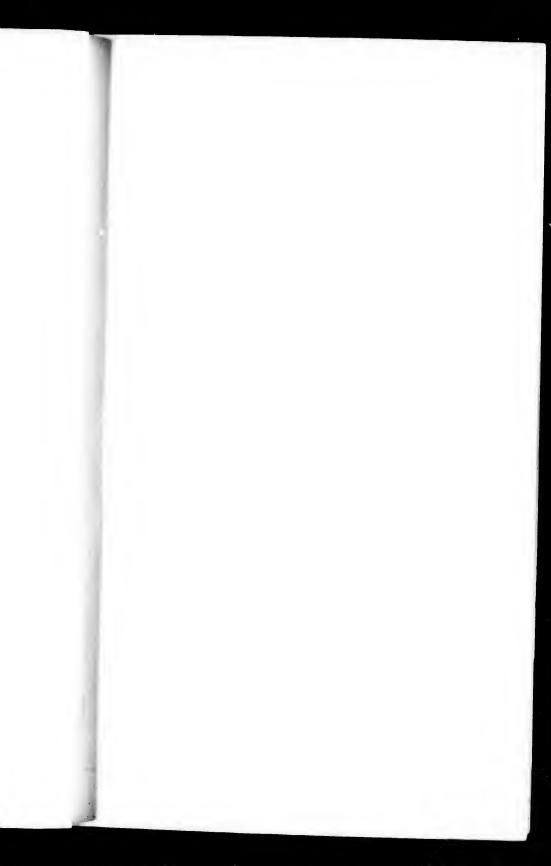


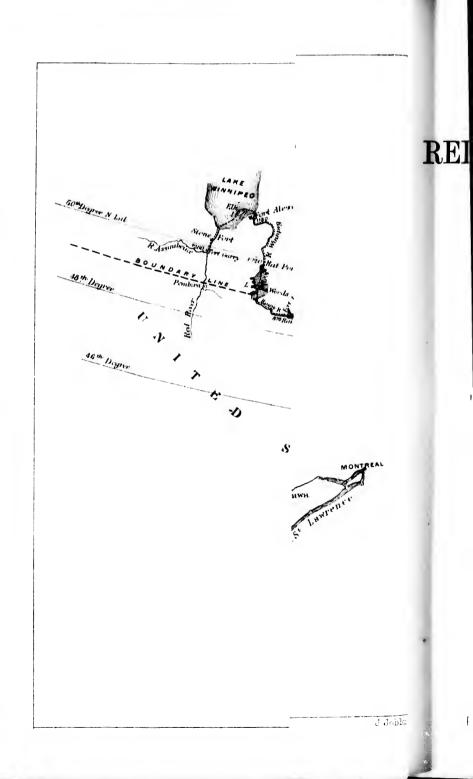
TEOR

THE

## RED RIVER EXPEDITION.







THE

# **RED RIVER EXPEDITION.**

BY

## CAPTAIN G. L. HUYSHE,

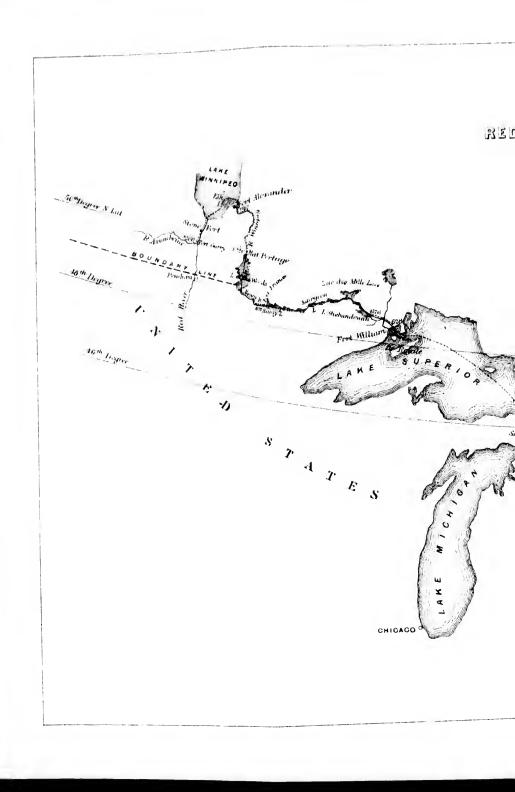
RIFLE BRIGADE,

LATE ON THE STALE OF COLONEL SIR GARNET WOLSELLY.

Fondon and New York: MACMILLAN AND CO. 1871.

[The Right of Translation and Reproduction is researed.]

J. Jabba





Huyin SIL

COLON

LONDON : R. CLAY, KONS, AND TAYLOR. PRINTERS, BREAD STREET HILL.

THE SUCO

TO

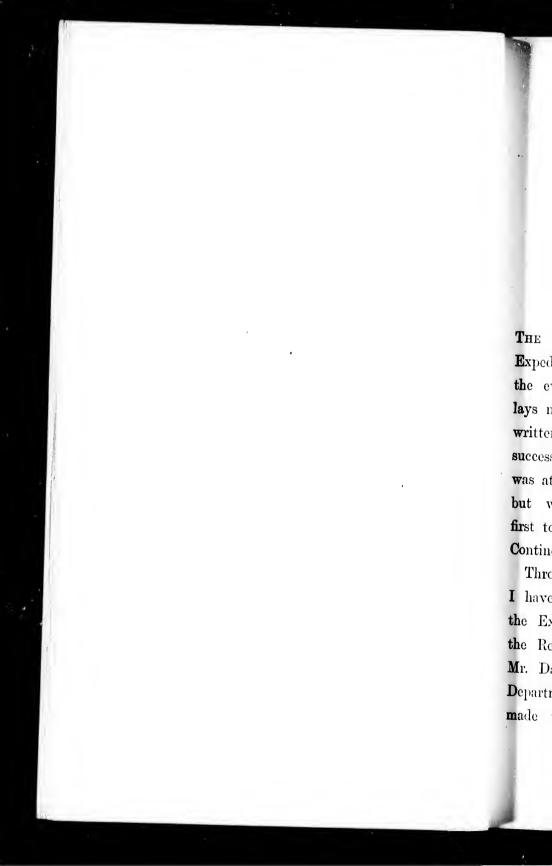
## COLONEL SIR GARNET WOLSELEY, C.B., K.C.M.G.,

TO WHOSE SKILL AND ENERGY

THE SUCCESS OF THE RED RIVER EXPEDITION WAS MAINLY DUE,

THESE PAGES ARE RESPECTIVLLY

## Dedicated.



## PREFACE.

**THE** following brief account of the Red River **E**xpedition has been mainly put together from the everyday jottings of a private journal, and lays no claim to any literary merit. It has been written in the hope of directing attention to the successful accomplishment of an expedition which was attended with more than ordinary difficulties, but which was completely overshadowed from first to last by the absorbing interest of a great **Continental** war.

Through the kindness of Sir Garnet Wolseley, I have had access to the official documents of the Expedition; I have also availed myself of the Reports on the line of route published by Mr. Dawson, C.E., and by the Topographical Department of the War Office. The statements made may therefore, I hope, be relied on as

PREFACE.

accurate and impartial. My aim has been to "extenuate naught, nor set down aught in malice." Political questions have been avoided as much as the nature of the subject would permit, as I feel that they do not come within the province of a soldier.

I have endeavoured to avoid tiring the general reader with dry details of military movements, and yet not to sacrifice the character of the work as an account of a military expedition. Whether or not between these two stools I have fallen to the ground, I must leave to the judgment of a kind and generous public, only premising that, as the book is not very voluminous, I trust I have not trespassed too much on their forbearance.

G. L. H.

WOOLWICH, March 20th, 1871.

MR. DA

AT PRE

INTRODU

PREPARM

FROM TO

viii

has been to ht in malice." ded as much d permit, as the province

g the general movements, of the work on. Whether have fallen judgment of emising that, ous, I trust i their forCONTENTS.

## CHAPTER I.

INTRODUCTORY THE RED	RIVER	SETTLEMENT					page 1
----------------------	-------	------------	--	--	--	--	-----------

CHAPTER II.

and and the second	PREPARATION	oF	THE	EXPEDITION						อา
								•	•	~ 1

G. L. H.

## CHAPTER III.

ROM	TORONTO	TO	THUNDER	BAY					37	

### CHAPTER IV.

AT TRINCE ARTHUR'S LANDING								10
----------------------------	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	----

## CHAPTER V.

 DAWSON'S	ROAD	,			,			CN

### CONTENTS.

### CHAPTER VI.

					FA61	3
The Start from Shebandowan		•	•		. 94	APPEND
CHAPTER VII.						APPEND
En Voyage					. 10]	Append
						APPEND
CHAPTER VIII.					-	Append
FORT FRANCES	• •		•		. 137 .	Append
						ΛD
CHAPTER IX.						
RAINY RIVER AND LAKE OF THE WOODS					. 156	
CHAPTER X.					4	
The Winnipeg River		· •		•	. 170	
CHAPTER XI.						
On to Fort Garry		• •	•		. 186	
CHAPTER XIL						-
						1
The Red River Settlement	•	• •			. 207	2

x

### CONTENTS.

### APPENDICES.

	Appendix AList of Rights			раде 241
	Appendix BList of Articles in the Boats			245
. 101	Appendix C Province of Manitoba Bill .			246
	Appendix DEmbarkation Return	To.	fare	258
. 157 .	Appendix E.—Standing Orders			259
	Appendix FDaily Ration of Food, and Clo	)TH	ING	
	ADOPTED FOR THE FORCE			269

156

Рлог 94

. 170

. 186 ,

. 207

xi

## LIST OF MAPS AND ILLUSTRATIONS.

* ROUTE OF THE RED RIVER EXPEDITIONARY FORCE	1406
FROM TORONTO TO FORT GARRY Frontispiece.	
"PRESIDENT" LOUIS RIEL	6
* PLAN OF MR. DAWSON'S ROAD FROM THUNDER BAY	
TO LAKE SHEBANDOWAN	51
PLAN OF ROUTE FROM LAKE SUPERIOR TO FORT	the second
GARRY	101 '
CROSSING A PORTAGE	112 p
Monseigneur Taché, Bishop of St. Boniface	213

1

\* Printed, by permission, from the Journal of the R.U.S. Institution.

## RE

INT

VERY portion and al south, very e: outside Four who ol a gran siniboin at first latterly the Re

## ATIONS.

ay Force contispiece.

To fare

DER BAY

PAGE

6

51

## NARRATIVE

### OF THE

## RED RIVER EXPEDITION, &c.

### CHAPTER I.

### INTRODUCTORY .- THE RED RIVER SETTLEMENT.

VERY near the centre of the northern or British portion of the vast continent of North America, and almost equally unapproachable from north, south, east or west, is a small settlement, the very existence of which was hardly known to the outside world until within the last few months.

Founded in 1813 by Alexander Lord Selkirk, who obtained from the Hudson's Bay Company a grant of land near the confluence of the Assiniboine and Red rivers, this little colony was at first known by the name of its founder, but latterly has received the general appellation of the Red River Settlement. For many years it

го Гокт

To face

To face 101

213

112

S. Institution.

### THE RED RIVER EXPEDITION.

2

CHAP.

1.]

had a precarious existence, having been several times threatened with extinction, both from its Indian neighbours and also from a still more formidable enemy, the plague of locusts or grasshoppers. It also suffered severely from the quarrels of the Hudson's Bay and North-West Companies until the amalgamation of the two rival trading Companies in 1822.

The situation chosen by Lord Selkirk for his Scotch emigrants was however so favourable, and the natural fertility of the soil so great, that the infant colony successfully struggled through these difficulties, and, receiving constant accessions to its strength, spread itself along the banks of both rivers till it attained the respectable population of about 15,000 souls.

Upon the completion of the great Act of Confederation of the British North American Provinces in 1867, the attention of Canadian statesmen was turned to this distant land, and negotiations were opened for the transfer of the North-West Territory to the new Dominion of Canada. The age of monopolies was past. The resumption by the Crown of its great Indian Empire in 1858, and the consequent extinction of the East India Company, had paved the way for a similar resump royal to " of E transf ment. son's payme would to the only a in the The 1869:the ric sorry t appoin ourable tenant and se with i all con

transfe

assume

was co

In t

CHAP.

1.]

een several h from its still more ts or grassthe quarrels Companies val trading

irk for his purable, and at, that the rough these eccessions to nks of both population

Act of Conn Provinces tesmen was ations were North-West nada. The angtion by in 1858, East India similar resumption of the vast tract of land granted by royal charter in King Charles the Second's time to "The Governor and Company of Adventurers of England trading into Hudson's Bay." The transfer was to be a kind of triangular arrangement. All territorial rights claimed by the Hudson's Bay Company were to be annulled on payment of 300,000*l*. by Canada, and the country would then be handed over by royal proclamation to the Dominion Government, the Company being only allowed to retain a certain amount of land in the vicinity of its trading posts.

The transfer was fixed for the 1st December, 1869; but the Dominion Cabinet, eager to secure the rich prize, and at the same time perhaps not sorry to get rid of a somewhat intractable servant, appointed its Minister of Public Works, the Honourable William McDougall, C.B., to be the Lieutenant-Governor of the North-West Territories, and sent him off in the month of September with instructions to proceed to Fort Garry "with all convenient speed," there to assist the formal transfer of the Territories, and to be "ready to assume the government" as soon as the transfer was completed.

In these negotiations between the Hudson's Bay

### THE RED RIVER EXPEDITION.

CHAP.

L]

Company and the Imperial and Dominion Governments, it does not appear that the feelings of the little colony at Red River were taken into account The French Emperor had not then set the at all. world the example of a plebiscite vote; the concurrence of the people so vitally interested does not appear to have been asked, nor was any guarantee that their rights and privileges should be respected held out as an inducement to the settlers to acquiesce quietly in the new order of things. Though there can be no doubt that they would have been fairly and justly treated by Canada, yet it cannot be a matter of wonder to any impartial person that they did not take quite the same view of the matter, but objected to be transformed from a Crown colony to a "colony of a colony," and handed over to the Dominion, bon gré mal gré, like so many head of cattle.

During the summer of 1369, a surveying party under a Colonel Dennis, of Volunteer fame, had been engaged surveying the country and dividing it into townships, &c., for future allotment by the Canadian Government. The proceedings of this party had given great offence to the French halfbreeds. The unsettled state of the land tenure as regards the half-breeds and Indians not unnaturally

excit lands Cana of so who land not t tion 1 the u the 10 survey heade of Co pelled nor M Bay C settler to all the Ca the la The p courag French McDot selves a mar

CHAP.

I.]

on Governings of the nto account hen set the ; the coned does not y guarantee e respected tlers to acs. Though have been t it cannot tial person ne view of rmed from lony," and é mal gré,

ying party fame, had d dividing ent by the gs of this ench halfl tenure as innaturally

excited apprehensions in their minds that their lands would be taken from them and given to Canadian immigrants; and the injudicious conduct of some of the members of the surveying party, who put up claims here and there to tracts of land that they happened to take a fancy to, did not tend to allay these angry feelings. The irritation raised by these causes operating together on the uneducated French half-breeds culminated on the 10th October, 1869, in open opposition to the surveying party: a band of some eighteen men, headed by a man named Louis Riel, stopped one of Colonel Dennis's surveying parties, and compelled them to discontinue their operations. Governor McTavish, then senior officer of the Hudson's Bay Company, and therefore the governor of the settlement, was appealed to in vain : Riel refused to allow the survey to continue, declaring that the Canadian Government had no right to survey the lands that belonged to the French settlers. The party was accordingly withdrawn, and, encouraged by this first success, the disaffected French resolved to prevent the entry of Mr. McDougall into the Territory. They formed themselves into a Provisional Government, electing a man named John Bruce, a French half-breed,

### THE RED RIVER EXPEDITION.

as president, and Louis Riel as secretary. The latter, however, was the ruling spirit, and exercised the real power, and very shortly after assumed himself the title of president.

The new "Provisional Government" proceeded to act with energy; a small armed force was established on Scratching River, about fifteen miles from Fort Garry, and a barricade thrown up across the road leading to Pembina; a messenger bearing the following letter was also despatched to the boundary line to await the arrival of Mr. McDougall:—

### Datée à ST. NORBERT, RIVIÈRE ROUGE, ce 21<sup>2me</sup> Jour d'Octobre, 1869.

### MONSIEUR,

Le Comité National des Metis de la Rivière Rouge intime à M. Wm. McDougall l'ordre de ne pas entrer sur le territoire du Nord-Ouest saus une permission spéciale de ce Comité.

### Par ordre du Président JOHN BRUCE,

LOUIS RIEL, Secrétaire.

CHAP.

### A Monsieur McDougalL.

This letter was handed to Mr. McDougall by the bearer, a French half-breed, on the 30th October, upon his arrival at the American Customhouse at Pembina, sixty miles from Fort Garry, and on the border line between British and American territory.

[CHAP,

ary. The l exercised r assumed

proceeded force was ut fifteen le thrown a; a meswas also await the

vière Rouge, blre, 1869.

re Rouge inr le territoire 5.

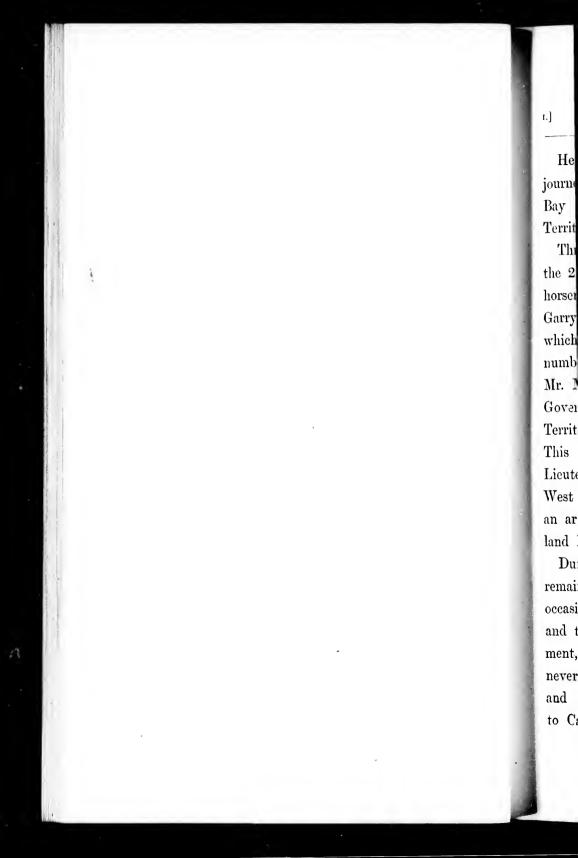
e, 1, Secrétaire.

ougall by the 30th a Customrt Garry, tish and



" PRESIDENT " LOUIS RIEL.

To fuer p. C



7

He took no notice of it, but continued his journey two miles further to the Hudson's Bay Company's post, *inside* the North-West Territory.

Three days afterwards, namely on the evening of the 2nd November, an armed party of fourteen horsemen approached from the direction of Fort Garry, and, dismounting at the gate of the stockade which surrounds the post, sent in two of their number, who politely but firmly intimated to Mr. McDougall that, by order of the Provisional Government, he must leave the North-West Territory by nine o'clock the following morning. This order was peremptorily enforced, and the Lieutenant-Governor Designate of the North-West Territory was ignominiously expelled by an armed force of French half-breeds from the land he had come to rule.

During the month of November Mr. McDougall remained quietly at Pembina, keeping up an occasional correspondence with Governor McTavish and the well-disposed inhabitants of the settlement, and waiting for the opportunity, which never came, of entering the Territory. The English and Scotch settlers, though favourably disposed to Canada, were yet unwilling, either from lack

r.]

### THE RED RIVER EXPEDITION.

18

I.]

CHAP.

of energy or from fear of commencing a civil strife, to compromise themselves openly in Mr. McDougall's favour, and allowed things to take their own course.

On the 24th November, Riel, with an armed party, took possession of Fort Garry, ostensibly to prevent its falling into the hands of Mr. McDougall, but in reality to obtain funds and provisions for carrying out his plan of making himself sole ruler of the country. Governor McTavish had twelve hours' notice of the intended occupation of the fort, but took no measures to prevent it. And here I must observe, that the uniform success of the insurgents in all their plans points undoubtedly, not only to advice and assistance from their own clergy (which is too notorious to need any argument), but also to sympathy, if not collusion, on the part of some of the Hudson's Bay Company's officials at Fort Garry. It is impossible to acquit the latter of all blame. Their utter inertness, and laissez aller policy, cannot be explained away by the illness of the Governor. He had the advice of a council, composed of many of the leading residents, to whom the prevalent feeling of discontent must have been well known,

but y spirit contro been e pation and re its sto visions of itse saries be, tl were not go expect countr ence a cessors anticip could the er They month Compa the C pay fo It v

[CHAP.

1.]

a civil in Mr. to take

a armed stensibly of Mr. nds and making Governor the intook no nust obsurgents not only n clergy gument), on the mpany's to acquit nertness, xplained He had nany of revalent known,

but yet nothing was done to check the rising spirit of rebellion, which soon passed beyond the control of its originators. Nothing could have been easier than to have prevented Riel's occupation of the fort by simply shutting the gates and refusing to let him in. Without the fort and its stores of money, arms, ammunition, and provisions, the *émeute* must have fallen to the ground of itself, and have collapsed for want of the necessaries of life. The only rational inference can be, that the Company's officials at Fort Garry were secretly pleased to find that Canada was not going to have such an easy time of it as she expected, and, loth to lose the government of the country themselves, they looked on with indifference at the troubles which welcomed their successors. Any danger to themselves they did not anticipate. Their eyes were blinded so that they could not see. When too late, they found out the error into which they had been betrayed. They found a despotic ruler established for nine months in their own fort, feeding his men on the Company's provisions, and paying them with the Company's money. Dearly indeed did they pay for their shortsightedness!

It was, however, only amongst the Company's

### THE RED RIVER EXPEDITION.

[CHAP.

ı.]

officials at Fort Garry itself that this unfortunate sympathy with the rebels existed. Elsewhere their loyalty was above suspicion, and the assistance they rendered to the expeditionary force during the next summer along the whole line of route was invaluable, and will be gladly acknowledged by every member of the expedition.

The 1st of December had been the day fixed for the transfer of the territory to Canada; accordingly, towards midnight on the 30th November, Mr. McDougall and his party sallied forth from their residence at Pembina, crossed the frontier, and took formal possession of the North-West Territory in the name of the Canadian Government. The cold was intense, the thermometer standing at 20° below zero, consequently there was no one to oppose this valorous but somewhat ludicrous proceeding. But the next act of Mr. McDougall was, unfortunately, not so ludicrous, and might have been attended with the most unhappy consequences. He issued two proclamations to the inhabitants of Red River,--one, on the 1st December, announcing his appointment as Lieutenant-Governor from that day; the other, on the 2nd December, confirming all public functionaries in their present offices, except, of course, Govern Dennis Conser to rais insurre Acti proceed Scotch (the H below ] the loy collision but for sentatio to a ch by the Rights, rash a ordered which This of stre Garry ; of his he mai

[CHAP.

1.]

ortunate lsewhere nd the itionary e whole e gladly edition. ay fixed da; ac-Novemd forth he fronth-West Governmometer ly there mewhatof Mr. idicrous, he most roclamaone, on ment as ther, on unctioncourse, Governor McTavish; and lastly, he gave Colonel Dennis a commission to act as Lieutenant and Conservator of the Peace, and empowered him to raise a body of armed men to put down the insurrection by force.

Acting upon this commission, Colonel Dennis proceeded to organize and drill the English and Scotch settlers, took possession of the Stone Fort (the Hudson's Bay Company's post twenty miles below Fort Garry), and garrisoned it with fifty of the loyal Indians from the Lower Settlement. A collision between the two parties was now imminent; but fortunately, at this juncture, the urgent representations of the English bishop and elergy, added to a change in the feelings of the settlers produced by the publication by the insurgents of a "Bill of Rights,"<sup>1</sup> induced Colonel Dennis to give up his rash attempt, and on the 9th December he ordered the loyal people to lay down their arms, which indeed most of them had already done.

This attempt to resort to force had the effect of strengthening the position of Riel in Fort Garry; aided by the influence and co-operation of his active allies, the Roman Catholic clergy, he managed to collect 400 or 500 men, whom he

<sup>1</sup> See Appendix A.

12

armed, clothed, fed, and paid from the plundering of the Hudson's Bay Company's stores, and from ' that time forth remained master of the situation.

Soon after these events Mr. McDougall, finding that he could do nothing to facilitate his entry into Fort Garry, returned to Canada, to meet there a storm of disapproval and censure from all sides, such as want of success seldom fails to elicit. The Canadian Cabinet condemned his policy in strong terms, and public opinion tried to make him the scapegoat for the blunders of others as well as for his own; but a calm and dispassionate review of the whole of the circumstances fails to endorse this wholesale condemnation.

Though he was at Pembina for a whole month before the 1st of December, yet he never received any intimation that the date of the transfer of the North-West Territory had been postponed. His position was a most embarrassing one. The loyal people of the settlement called upon him for some exposition of the state of affairs ; therefore, assuming (as he had every right to do) that the date originally fixed for the transfer would not be altered without his being informed of it, he issued his Proclamation. Of his commission to Colonel Dennis, and his attempt to put down the insurrection by force

CHAP.

**I**.]

through perhaps that wh his act unfortu with b extent manner Perhaps and de they be In th the Ott Vicar-C to Red officer was als Commi causes Govern should Smith Decem tained his cou himself

[CHAP.

undering

und from uation.

, finding ntry into

there a all sides.

it. The

n strong him the

ell as for

eview of

orse this

e month

received r of the

d. His

he loyal

for some

ssuming

riginally without

imation. and his

y force

1.]

through that officer's assistance, the less said perhaps the better. But it is curious to notice, that whilst the Government fully approved of all his acts up to the 1st December, yet after that unfortunate Proclamation he was overwhelmed with blame even for previous acts, to such an extent that even his personal bearing and manners did not escape the general censure. Perhaps some of his greatest political enemies and detractors might have fared no better, had they been in his place.

In the meantime, intent on conciliatory measures, the Ottawa Government sent two Commissioners, Vicar-General Thiebault and Colonel de Salaberry, to Red River. Mr. Donald Smith, the principal officer of the Hudson's Bay Company in Canada, was also sent a few days afterwards as a Special Commissioner to inquire into and report on the causes of the disturbances, and also to assist Governor McTavish or relieve him of his duties, should he be incapacitated by illness. Mr. Donald Smith arrived at the Settlement on the 27th December, was admitted into the fort, and obtained an interview with "President" Riel and his council, the result of which was that he found himself virtually a prisoner within the walls of the

CHAP.

At this time there were some sixty British fort. subjects held in close confinement as "political prisoners;" the British ensign had been hauled down, and in its place the flag of the "Provisional Government" (fleurs-de-lys and shamrocks) waved over Fort Garry; it was also the avowed determination of some of the leaders of the rebellion to bring about the annexation of the Territory to the United States. After much delay and opposition, Mr. Donald Smith was allowed to explain to the people the views of the Canadian Government at a mass meeting attended by upwards of 1,000 people, held on the 19th and 20th January, 1870, in the open air, notwithstanding the intense cold of the weather, 25 deg. below zero. The result of this meeting was the appointment of forty delegates, who met on the 25th January, and continued in consultation till February 10th. They finally decided on sending three delegates to Canada, and selected for that purpose Judge Black, the Rev. Father Richot, and Mr. Alfred H. Scott. A "Bill of Rights" was also prepared for submission to the Canadian Government.

During the sitting of the Convention, Riel broke out into open violence; he placed a guard over G ously i shot be the Hu loaded finemen ing to not sw ment. and he on the eight o remain This

1.]

ever, la settlem determ assemb joined The pa Boulto ment, his ow dissuad organiz provisi

#### INTRODUCTORY.

[CHAP,

1.]

y British political hauled ovisional s) waved d deterrebellion Cerritory lay and wed to anadian ded by 9th and notwith-25 deg. was the on the tion till sending for that Richot, Rights " anadian

n, Riel 1 guard over Governor McTavish, who was then dangerously ill, and declared that he would have him shot before midnight. He also seized Dr. Cowan, the Hudson's Bay officer in charge of the district, loaded him with abuse, and put him into confinement along with the other prisoners, threatening to shoot him within three hours if he did not swear allegiance to the Provisional Government. His violence, however, soon cooled down; and he released them on the 10th of February, and on the 11th and 12th also set at liberty six or eight of the other prisoners, and promised that the remainder should also soon be released.

This improved condition of affairs did not, however, last long. The people at Prairie Portage (a settlement about sixty miles from Fort Garry), being determined to effect the release of the prisoners, assembled to the number of 80 or 100, and were joined by some 300 English and Scotch half-breeds. The party was under the command of a Major Boulton, formerly a captain in the 100th Regiment, and who had joined them much against his own judgment, after striving ineffectually to dissuade them from the attempt. They were unorganized, undrilled, badly armed, and without provisions, and utterly unable to cope with the

French party, who far exceeded them in numbers. and had large supplies of food, arms, and ammunition. Major Boulton's intention was to make a dash at the fort by night and carry it by a coup de main; but this plan, which indeed was the only one at all likely to be successful, was frustrated by a violent snow-storm on the very night on which the attempt was made. The road was rendered impassable by snow, and the party were unable to reach the fort before daylight. Their design thus got wind, and finding it now impossible to surprise the fort, they began to disperse to their homes. This action was quickened by inability to procure food for so large a number of men, and also by intelligence of the promised release of the prisoners, to effect which had been their main object in taking up arms.

On their way back to the Portage, forty-seven of them, including Major Boulton and one Thomas Scott, passed too near Fort Garry, and were captured by Riel on the 17th February. Boulton was tried by court-martial, and condemned to be shot at noon on the 18th; but at the urgent intercession of some of the most influential people in the settlement, his execution was postponed till midnight on the 19th. Poor Boulton, condemned to a mise of a p state o had rec McLean lost all when, 1 the ince pardone of feelin Archdea On t in the repeated prisoner leased; by wha to say, pardona hope of Thomas mock d "adjuta with in to take

entreati

CHAP.

1.]

#### INTRODUCTORY.

[CHAP,

1.]

umbers, ammumake a a coup as the is fruse very e road party ylight. it now to disckened umber omised d been

ven of homas ptured tried tot at ession n the midied to a miserable and ignominious death at the hands of a political faction, was kept in this dreadful state of suspense until 11 P.M. on the 19th; he had received the last sacrament from Archdeaeon McLean, had given his last commands, and having lost all hopes of life, had prepared himself for death, when, literally at the eleventh hour, Riel yielded to the incessant solicitations of Mr. Donald Smith, and pardoned him. It is difficult to imagine the revulsion of feeling that he must have experienced when the Archdeaeon brought him the news of his pardon.

On the 26th February the elections were held in the English parishes, and on the 28th Riel repeated his promise that the remainder of the prisoners captured with Boulton should be released; but suddenly, on the 4th March, swayed by what motives of policy or revenge it is hard to say, this capricious tyrant, resolved by one unpardonable act to commit his followers beyond hope of redemption, caused one of the prisoners, Thomas Scott, to be tried by court-martial. The mock court, presided over by one Lépine, the "adjutant-general," condemned him to death, and with inhuman cruelty his execution was ordered to take place at noon the same day. Deaf to all entreaties, Riel declared that nothing should save

CHAP.

1.]

Scott, who, he said, had been unruly whilst in confinement, and insolent to the "soldiers" and to him (Riel), and that it was necessary to make an example in order that Canada should respect the people of Red River. The execution of the sentence is thus described in Mr. Donald Smith's interesting report: "It was now within a few minutes of one o'clock, and on entering the Governor's house, the Rev. Mr. Young joined and said, 'It is now considerably past me the hour; I trust you have succeeded ?' 'No,' I said, 'for God's sake go back at once to the poor man, for I fear the worst.' He left immediately, and a few minutes after he had entered the room in which the prisoner was confined, some guards marched in and told Scott his hour was come. Not until then did the radiative of his position flash upon poor Scott: he said 'Goodbye' to the other prisoners, was led outside the gate of the fort with a white handkerchief covering his head; his coffin, having a piece of white cotton thrown over it, was carried out; his eyes were bandaged; he continued in prayer, in which he had been engaged on the way, for a few minutes. He asked Mr. Young how he should place himself, whether standing or kneeling, then knelt in the snow, said

farewe by the The fir it is s been fu were lo did no aside w back to while a the bal round tween the dis to have ground not acc the Bi He wa descend Scott, a bloode so occi Afte cared ruled

#### INTRODUCTORY.

19

[CHAP.

1.1

hilst in and to o make respect of the Smith's a few ng the joined y past 'No,' I he poor diately, ie room guards s come. on flash e other rt with s coffin, over it, ie conngaged ed Mr. vhether v, said

farewell, and immediately after fell back pierced by three bullets, which passed through his body. The firing party consisted of six men, all of whom, it is said, were more or less intoxicated. It has been further stated that only three of the muskets were loaded with ball cartridge, and that one man did not discharge his piece. Mr. Young turned aside when the first shots were fired, then went back to the body, and again retired for a moment while a man discharged his revolver at the sufferer, the ball, it is said, entering the eye and passing round the head. The wounded man groaned between the time of receiving the musket-shots and the discharge of the revolver. Mr. Young asked to have the remains for interment in the buryingground of the Presbyterian Church, but this was not acceded to, and a similar request preferred by the Bishop of Rupert's Land was also refused. He was buried within the walls of the fort. On descending the steps leading from the prison, poor Scott, addressing Mr. Young, said, 'This is a coldblooded murder,' then engaged in prayer, and was so occupied until he was shot."

After this bloodthirsty display of power, none eared to dispute the authority of Riel, and he ruled the country with a rod of iron.

## THE RED RIVER EXPEDITION. [CHAP. I.

When the news of this cold-blooded murder reached Canada, it produced a deep sensation of horror throughout the length and breadth of the Public meetings were held in Toronto and land. other towns in Western Canada, and resolutions passed urging the Government to despatch an expedition to the Red River to restore the authority of the Queen and punish the murderers of Scott. As soon as the delegates from Fort Garry arrived at Ottawa, two of them, Father Richot and Alfred Scott, were arrested as accessories before the fact to the murder of Thomas Scott; but after a formal examination they were obliged to be released, as nothing could be proved against them. The public mind was vehemently excited, more especially in Ontario, to which province Thomas Scott belonged; and to the previous desire for the acquisition of the fertile prairies of the North-West was now added in the breast of every patriotic Canadian a deep sympathy with the relatives of the murdered man, and an ardent longing to avenge the death of a fellow-countryman, whose only crime had been loyalty to his Queen and devotion to his country.

IT ha expedi the R ment troops militia Deput Wolse detail organ elothi sugge stitut whom regula batta

[CHAP. I.

# murder ation of of the nto and olutions an exuthority f Scott. arrived Alfred the fact formal used, as The e espes Scott acquiest was Canaof the avenge e only votion

## CHAPTER II.

## PREPARATION OF THE EXPEDITION.

It having been determined to send a military expedition to restore the authority of the Queen at the Red River, the sanction of the Home Government was obtained for the employment of Imperial troops on this service in conjunction with Canadian militia. An able report had been prepared by the Deputy Quartermaster-General in Canada, Colonel Wolseley, in which he had entered into minute details regarding the composition, equipment, and organization of the force, as well as its victualling, elothing, and transport. In accordance with his suggestions, the expeditionary force, as finally constituted, numbered about 1,200 fighting men, of whom two-thirds were militia, and the remainder The latter consisted of the first regular troops. battalion 60th Royal Rifles, 350 strong; detach-

ments of Royal Artillery and Royal Engineers, twenty men each, with a battery of four 7-pounder brass mountain guns, and a proportion of the Army Service and Army Hospital corps. The former consisted of two battalions of Rifles, one from each province, raised for two years by voluntary enlistment from the drilled militia. These two battalions were named respectively the 1st or Ontario Rifles, and the 2nd or Quebec Rifles. The regiments of infantry were divided into seven companies of fifty strong (including three officers), with the object of making them more handy and available for boat service by putting each company into a brigade of The selections for this service were five boats. most strict, and none but men of the strongest and hardiest constitutions were permitted to go, it being rightly decided that on an expedition of this nature, about to plunge into an unknown and uninhabited wilderness, every sick man would be a more than ordinary encumbrance.

Early in April 1870, Lieutenant-General the Honourable James Lindsay arrived in Canada as Commander-in-chief, in succession to the late Sir Charles Windham. The selection of this officer was most opportune; his long previous residence in Canada, and intimate personal acquaintance with the p larly peculi milita by the with t depart recogn possib It the diplon smootcountr politic did Ge But to per the co entru him. alread Cana and obed and mod

11.]

CHAP.

### PREPARATION OF THE EXPEDITION.

[CHAP.

п.]

ngineers, pounder ie Army former om each y enlistttalions Rifles, ients of of fifty bject of or boat gade of e were rongest to go, ion of n and uld be

I the da as te Sir officer nce in with

the people and the country, rendered him particularly well fitted for the post. Owing to the peculiar "dual" composition of the force, the military arrangements had to be carried out, not by the Imperial authorities only, but also in concert with the Dominion Government, represented in this department by a French Canadian minister, the recognized leader of a party which opposed in every possible manner the departure of the expedition. It therefore required very delicate handling and diplomatic management to make matters work A Commander-in-chief new to the smoothly. country, and unacquainted with its parties and politics, could scarcely have succeeded so well as did General Lindsay.

But he had another and not less important duty to perform, that of selecting the officer to whom the command of the expeditionary force should be entrusted. But here public opinion had been before him. There was an officer in Canada who had already been twice in command of large bodies of Canadian volunteers, and had won the confidence and love of his men, as well as their unhesitating obedience, by his peculiar aptitude for command, and by his happy admixture of the "suaviter in modo" with the "fortiter in re." He was no

novice in the art of war, but had received his "baptism of fire" in Burmah, and had served in India, in the Crimea, and in China. The Canadian volunteers had not forgotten their favourite commander, and the "vox populi" unanimously called for his appointment as leader of the expedition. Fortunately, General Lindsay's opinion coincided with the popular voice, and accordingly Colonel Wolseley was nominated to the command. Seldom indeed has any selection met with more general approval, and assuredly never has it been more justified by the result.

Early in May, General Lindsay, accompanied by Colonel Wolseley, repaired to Toronto, where the force was to rendezvous before its final de-The enlistment of volunteers for the parture. Ontario battalion proceeded briskly. The medical examination of the men was very strict, and numbers were rejected as physically unable to stand the fatigues they were expected to undergo. Great was the disappointment of the rejected, and many a threatening and angry look was cast on the medical But so great was the anxiety of the young officers. men of all classes in Ontario to go to the Red River, that many, who could not get commissions as officers, preferred shouldering a rifle in the ranks

to bei percen privat of the notabl other betwee advan is cert I hea old el just 1 intend friend The enrol to m the  $\epsilon$ the 1 their  $\operatorname{sent}$ Wes twobatt spea Frei

24

СНАР

#### PREPARATION OF THE EXPEDITION.

[CHAP

11.]

ed his ved in nadian comcalled dition. neided olonel eldom ceneral more

panied where al der the edical and stand Great any a edical oung liver, as as ranks to being left behind. Consequently, quite a large percentage of the non-commissioned officers and privates of the Ontario battalion were the equals of their officers in education and social position : notably, of two brothers, one was a captain, the other a sergeant. This equality of social position between officers and men, though in some respects advantageous, yet is not without its drawbacks. It is certainly not conducive to discipline. For instance, I heard a private say to an officer, "Now then, old chap, when you've done with that newspaper just hand it over;" and though no disrespect was intended by the remark, the two probably being old friends or schoolfellows, yet it sounded rather queer.

The Quebee battalion was not so fortunate in its enrolment. The French Canadians, naturally averse to military service, were deterred from enlisting by the exhortations of their clergy, who, in many of the parishes in Lower Canada, publicly dissuaded their flocks from joining a regiment "about to be sent to fight against their brethren in the North-West." They enlisted slowly, and, inasmuch as two-thirds of the officers appointed to the Quebee battalion were French Canadians, the Englishspeaking Canadians objected to serve under French officers. The ranks filled slowly, and not

## THE RED RIVER SETTLEMENT.

CHAP.

until enlistment was allowed from Ontario did the battalion complete its numbers, and though nominally a French battalion, yet in reality there were scarcely fifty French in its ranks.

The recruits for the two battalions were sent to Toronto as fast as they were enlisted, and were there formed into companies and served out with arms and clothing, under the superintendence of Colonel Feilden, of the 60th Rifles, to whom their organization had been specially confided. To his indefatigable exertions and intimate knowledge of the minutiæ of "interior economy," as well as to his kindly demeanour in smoothing over little roughnesses, much of the subsequent good order of these battalions is due. The grounds of the Crystal Palace, which building had been told off for their accommodation, presented an animated scene, and became the daily rendezvous of the people of Toronto, who were never tired of seeing their citizen soldiery hard at work at drill, and rapidly assuming the appearance and bearing of To their credit be it said, both officers soldiers. and men took a great interest in their new work, and an honourable spirit of emulation and esprit de corps was roused between the two battalions.

Meantime a Land Transport Service was being

organi and ca two b for Er horses chased were s branch details shod a it was weeks active over v carrie in its over a of the one ti For inform quart State it be soil, enabl

п.]

### PREPARATION OF THE EXPEDITION.

27

organized; a corps of teamsters was raised, waggons and carts built, and horses purchased. From the two batteries of Royal Artillery then under orders for England, a large number of excellent draught horses were procured, the remainder being purchased from farmers in the country. Two officers were specially appointed to the care of this necessary branch, and the fitting of shoes, harness, and other details proceeded rapidly. Each horse was newly shod and supplied with a spare set of shoes, which it was hoped would suffice for the fortnight or three weeks during which they were expected to be in active work. Vain hope! the real state of the road over which the provisions and matériel had to be carried was known only to the engineer employed in its construction, and this item of land transport over a paltry fifty miles was destined to be a source of the most vexatious delay, even threatening at one time the success of the whole expedition.

For the actual route from Toronto to Fort Garry information had been carefully collected from all quarters. The passage of troops through the United States territory being of course out of the question, it became necessary to find a road through British soil, and the Hudson's Bay Company's officers were enabled to be of some assistance in this way, as

[CHAP.

п.]

o did hough there

nt to were with ce of their o his ge of as to little er of the l off ated the eing and g of cers ork, t de

eing

they were in the habit of proceeding from Canada to York Factory by a route which passed close to the mouths of the Red River. The canoe route usually taken by them was adopted, with one or two slight changes. By this route the distance is a little over 1,200 miles; and to accomplish it, it was necessary that all the means of progression known to the human race (except that of balloons!) should be made use of. Conveyance by rail, by steam-ships, by land transport, and by boats, had to be provided. The route lay from Toronto by rail (94 miles) to Collingwood, on the Georgian Bay; thence by steamer across Lakes Huron and Superior (534 miles) to Thunder Bay; thence by land transport over Mr. Dawson's road (50 miles) to Lake Shebandowan; and from that point in boats to Fort Garry (550 miles): or, in round numbers, 1,200 miles.

Of this, the latter portion (600 miles), from Lake Superior, presented the greatest difficulties, as the route passed through a wilderness of lakes and rivers, traversed only by the Indian in his birch-bark canoe, and never hitherto attempted by any boat of European construction. Some portion of this route had been surveyed by Mr. S. J. Dawson, of the Public Works department, who was en which v with tl in an a North-1868 accomp it the He wa Govern Transp wards boat-bu boats v They a gene 6 to ' a weig Mr. I collect navig of con under about of "N were

11.]

CHAP.

 $\mathbf{28}$ 

## PREPARATION OF THE EXPEDITION.

was employed in the construction of the road which was to connect the waters of Lake Superior with the innumerable lakes and rivers stretching in an almost unbroken chain to the prairies of the North-West. This gentleman had also published in 1868 an interesting report of this very route, accompanied by maps, with the idea of making it the highway of emigration to the Red River. He was accordingly employed by the Dominion Government in the organization of the "Boat Transport Service," and under his directions upwards of 200 boats were built in the various boat-building establishments in Canada. These boats were of two kinds, "clinkers" and "carvels." They were also of different dimensions, but as a general rule were from 25 to 30 feet long, by 6 to 7 feet wide, and were constructed to carry a weight of 4 tons, besides a crew of 14 men. Mr. Dawson also undertook the onerous task of collecting a body of trained boatmen, skilled in the navigation of boats in rapid water, as it was not of course to be expected that the soldiers should understand this kind of work. He got together about 400 men, who were dignified with the name of "voyageurs," but the great majority of whom were utterly ignorant of their work, and proved

[CHAP.

11.]

nada se to route le or ce is it, it ssion ons!) l, by had by gian and by iles) ; in und rom ies. kes his by ion J.

/ho

CHAP.

afterwards to be only encumbrances in the boats. A very small percentage of them were really "voyageurs," excepting about 100 Iroquois Indians drawn from the villages of St. Regis and Caughnawaga, in the neighbourhood of Montreal, who, with scarcely an exception, were splendid fellows, and without whom it is not too much to say that the troops never could have reached their The boats were fitted with masts and destination. sails, in addition to oars, that they might take advantage of favourable breezes across the lakes, and with arm-chests for the men's rifles and swords; a chest of tools and implements for repairing damages was also provided with each brigade of five boats.1

Immediately upon his arrival at Toronto, General Lindsay, accompanied by Colonel Wolseley and the officers of the Control Department, had gone to Collingwood to make the arrangements for the marine transport of the troops from that port across the great lakes to Thunder Bay; and had in one day by dint of hard work inspected the steamers, decided on their different capabilities for the conveyance of troops, and actually concluded a bargain on very favourable terms with their

<sup>1</sup> See Appendix B.

п.]

## PREPARATION OF THE EXPEDITION.

owners, which was telegraphed to Ottawa for the sanction of the Government. Unluckily, that sanction was refused, and the Ottawa Minister undertook the chartering of the vessels himself, with the result of having to pay higher prices than those he had refused to sanction, besides causing a delay of a week or ten days in the hiring of the steamers, and therefore in the starting of the expedition. This little incident will convey an idea of some of the difficulties attending the "dual" organization, that same difficulty which in a greater degree (if Mr. Kinglake is to be believed) attended the earlier operations of the English and French armics in the Crimea, and marred their best-concerted plans.

From Collingwood to Thunder Bay the distance is 534 miles, through Lakes Huron and Superior, and the traffic along this line is carried on by two steamers, the *Algoma* and the *Chicora*, which run every fifth day from Collingwood to Fort William in Thunder Bay. But the waters of Lake Superior flow into Lake Huron through a broad channel called St. Mary's River, which forms the boundary line between British and American territory. This river has very pretty rapids about a mile in length, and to pass these (which are not

CHAP.

н.]

boats. really dians aughwho, lows, o say their a and take akes, and for each

e to the port had the for ided heir

navigable for large craft) it is necessary to go through a canal built on the American side, so that in fact it is impossible for Canada to get at her possessions in Lake Superior by water without passing through American soil. On the first hint of difficulties at Red River and the probable despatch of troops through Lake Superior, the American authorities at the Sault Ste. Marie not only refused to allow the troops to pass through the eanal, but even stopped the Chicora, on her regular trip, although she had no contraband of war on board. This unfriendly attitude caused much delay and trouble to the expeditionary force, as it became necessary to land everything on the Canadian side at the lower end of the rapids, transport it by land across a three-mile portage, and re-embark it again at the upper end. For this purpose the Algoma, which, fortunately, had previously passed the canal, was detained on Lake Superior at a considerable expense, and an American steamer called the Brooklyn was chartered and sent to her assistance. A glance at the map will explain the situation, which was most embarrassing, and necessitated the employment of two lines of steamers, one on Lake Huron, the other on Lake Superior, besides the delay

in unl can b tion o for "1 ment," him 1 expedi it was Thornt withdr bargo to all was do been la caused In Wolsel Ontario garriso Col. B Adjuta of sup the ti The de ment was ha

11.]

CHAP.

## PREPARATION OF THE EXPEDITION.

33

[СПАР.

11.]

o go e, so et at thout hint bable the not ough her d of used force, the pids, tage, For had on l an charthe most nent iron, elay

in unloading, transporting, and re-shipping. There can be no doubt that at this time a large section of the American people felt much sympathy for "President" Riel and his "Provisional Government," and were glad of any opportunity to aid him by throwing obstacles in the way of the expedition : hence the closing of the canal ; and it was not until the urgent remonstrances of Mr. Thornton had induced the Washington Cabinet to withdraw the obnoxious restriction, that the embargo was removed, and a free passage allowed to all articles not contraband of war. Before this was done, however, several ship-loads of stores had been landed on the Canadian side, and much delay caused thereby.

In consequence of these difficulties Colonel Wolseley despatched two companies of the 1st Ontario Rifles on the 14th of May to form a garrison at the Sault under the command of Lieut.-Col. Bolton, Royal Artillery, the Deputy-Assistant Adjutant-General to the force, for the purpose of superintending the passage of the troops and the transport of the stores across the portage. The departure of these companies, the first detachment of the Red River force which left Toronto, was hailed with delight by the people of Ontario,

CHAP.

who had set their hearts on the success of the expedition, and were determined to carry it through. Colonel Bolton arrived safely at the Sault, and immediately set to work to complete the road across the portage and get the stores re-shipped on Lake Superior.

Just at this time the hydra-headed Fenian organization began again to raise its head, and threaten the peace and security of Canada. Two more companies of the 1st Ontario Rifles were therefore sent off on the 16th to increase the garrison at the Sault, and Colonel Bolton was directed to be on the alert to guard against a raid from the American side, as the Fenians had openly declared their intention to annoy and interfere with the expedition. The threatened raid actually took place soon afterwards on the Huntingdon Border, the results of which are well known; and there is no doubt that, had not Colonel Wolseley's foresight and vigilance rendered such an attempt impossible, an effort would have been made to destroy the stores accumulated at the Sault. Had such an attempt been successful, it would have caused such a delay to the expedition as would probably have prevented the return of the regular troops before the winter, if not

actuall year. The the rec tuting a new of Ma provide Govern selectio of mue press o of a 1 officer ditiona was s Macdon of the Canada been s Granvi the Ho But th oppose French

11.]

## [CHAP.

11.]

of the ry it t the nplete stores

Tenian , and Two were e the was nst a s had and itened n the e well l not dered have ed at essful. xpedieturn f not

## PREPARATION OF THE EXPEDITION.

35

actually put off the expedition for another year.

The last act of the Canadian Parliament before the recess had been the passing of a bill constituting a portion of the North-West Territory into a new province, under the title of the Province of Manitoba.<sup>1</sup> Amongst other things, this bill provided for the appointment of a Lieutenant-Governor to rule over the new province; and the selection of the man for this office was a subject of much debate and difficulty. The whole of the press of Ontario was in favour of the nomination of a British officer, and pointed out that that officer ought to be the Commander of the expeditionary force, Colonel Wolseley. This view was supported by the Premier, Sir John A. Macdonald ; by Sir Stafford Northcote, the President of the Hudson's Bay Company, who was then in Canada; and by Sir Clinton Murdoch, who had been sent out on a diplomatic mission by Lord Granville, and was entrusted with the views of the Home Government on the North-West question. But the French Canadian party were vehemently opposed to such a nomination, desiring that a French Canadian and a Roman Catholic should

<sup>1</sup> See Appendix C.

D 2

## THE RED RIVER EXPEDITION. [CHAP. 11.

be appointed. At this juncture, unfortunately, the Premier fell sick, so dangerously that his life was despaired of : during his illness the whole power of the Cabinet fell into the hands of the French Canadian Minister, Sir George Etienne Cartier. His influence was so great that a compromise between the two parties was effected, and in place of a British officer or a French Canadian, the Honourable Mr. Archibald, of Nova Scotia, was appointed Lieutenant-Governor of Manitoba.

AFTER hour o tudino length first s mornir and st ditiona It con 60th 1 of the compa of Ma troops depart ships

## HAP. II.

ately, is life whole of the tienne coml, and adian, Scotia, oba.

## CHAPTER III.

## FROM TORONTO TO THUNDER BAY.

AFTER a stay of seventeen days in Toronto, every hour of which had been busily spent in the multitudinous details of preparation, matters were at length in a sufficiently forward state to enable the first start to be made; and accordingly, on the morning of the 21st of May, Colonel Wolseley and staff, and the advanced guard of the expeditionary force, left Toronto for Thunder Bay. It consisted of Captain Ward's company of the 60th Rifles, and was followed on the afternoon of the same day by the Head-quarters, and four companies of the same regiment, under command of Major Robertson. The embarkation of the troops took place at Collingwood, the port of departure, that same evening, on board the steamships Chicora and Frances Smith, together with

38

a quantity of stores of all kinds, and about sixty-four horses with waggons and teamsters for the Land Transport Service. On board the former vessel also proceeded Mr. Irvine, the Assistant Controller in sub-charge of that department, and Dr. Young, the principal medical officer. The vessel was crowded with men, horses, boats, and stores, having on board besides the troops a large number of voyageurs and workmen for the road under the charge of Mr. S. J. Dawson, C.E.

The voyage was unmarked by any incident of peculiar interest, though the scenery was beautiful and diversified. For some distance the route lay among islands, now passing through narrow channels and anon opening out into wide expanses of water, dotted with innumerable rocky islands of all shapes and sizes. In the narrowest and prettiest of these channels the steamer stopped at a little settlement rejoicing in the romantic name of Killarney. The deep, narrow channel, the rocky islets covered with a stunted growth of pines, the pretty little knot of houses clustering round the village church, all combined to render the scene highly picturesque and pleasing to the eye. The charm of novelty, too, was not wanting: here for the first time we came across evidences of Indians-a birch-bark canoe, and th on the regula the chi The with Great Wight Sark " of the habite Island Here a for th grows ordina consis he ex of Ca himse the s and i was estab whic

111.]

CHAP.

## FROM TORONTO TO THUNDER BAY.

39

canoe, with two squaws and a "papoose" in it, and three or four copper-coloured fellows lounging on the wharf close by. One of the women had fine regular features of the Circassian type, the other and the child were certainly ugly, even repulsively so.

The northern portion of Lake Huron is covered with innumerable islands; the largest of these, Great Manitoulin Island, is as large as the Isle of Wight, with "Jersey, Guernsey, Alderney, and Sark" (as the school-books say) thrown in. Most of these islands have no name, and are uninhabited, but at one of them, called "Raspberry Island," the steamer stopped for a few minutes. Here an enterprising Yankee had "located" himself for the cultivation of that delicious fruit, which grows wild all over Canada, but with more than ordinary luxuriance on this island. His business consisted in converting the fruit into jam, which ' he exported in enormous quantities to all parts of Canada and the States, thereby making unto himself a considerable profit. He came on board the steamer, and was most affable and amusing, and invited us to walk up to his house, which was close by the landing-place, and visit his establishment. The chief attraction, however, which he held out to us was a view of his better-

[JIIAP.

111.]

about s for ormer stant and The and large road nt of atiful e lay nnels ater, apes these nent mey. reed little irch, sque elty, we Jark

CHAP.

half. "Come up and see my wife," he said ; "I guess she'll astonish you! Why, sir, she weighs 265 lbs.!" Some of us were not proof against this extraordinary attraction, and paid a visit to the good lady in question, who certainly *did* astonish us ; and, if "raised" on raspberry jam, was a most perfect walking advertisement of the nutritive qualities of that vegetable as manufactured by her enterprising spouse.

A little further on the steamer stopped at the Bruce mines, on the north shore of the lake, and remained there during the night, as the entrance to St. Mary's River is intricate and difficult, the channel winding amongst rocks and islands very pretty to look at by daylight, but unpleasant neighbours on a dark night. Here there is a flourishing village, which has sprung up around the mines in the wonderful mushroom-way in which anything in the way of mining attracts adventurous spirits. The mines are of copper, and said to be very rich and to pay well, notwithstanding the present low price of that metal. Anything more barren, sterile, and unpromising than the country around it would be hard to find, and it is well that bounteous nature has provided riches beneath the surface to compensate for the uncompromising sterility above.

skippe of con been lessne demea last, giving out, " we a shorte And not answe Th but 1 there oppo diffei smal side euric may fact,

ш.]

An

broug

called

#### FROM TORONTO TO THUNDER BAY.

CHAP.

111.]

guess [bs.!" nary fuesised" lvertable ; the and ance

and ance the very sant is a ound in caets pper, notetal. sing find, ided the

An early start at daybreak on the 23rd soon brought us to the Sault Ste. Marie, commonly called the "Soo," as we were informed by the skipper of a steamboat at Collingwood. In course of conversation the name "Sault Ste. Marie" had been frequently mentioned, and a certain restlessness was observable in the said skipper's demeanour at each repetition of the name; at last, however, unable to stand it any longer, and giving his trousers a preliminary hitch, he broke out, "Call it the Soo, sir, the Soo! (emphatically): we always calls it the Soo; it's ever so much shorter, and everybody will understand ye." And so we called it the Soo from that day, not venturing to contend against such unanswerable logic.

The approach to the rapids is very beautiful, but the same marked difference was observable there as everywhere else in America, where the opposite shores of a river or lake belong to different nationalities: on the Canadian side a small and insignificant village, on the American side a thriving town. The explanation of this curious fact, somewhat unpalatable to "Britishers," may be left to wiser heads; but that it *is* a fact, no one will venture to deny. The *Chicora* 

СНАР.

landed her troops and camp-equipment at the lower end of the rapids on Canadian soil, and then steamed over to the American side to pass through the canal. The "portage" road round the rapids is about three miles long and in good order, much of it having been made since the arrival of Lieutepant-Colonel Bolton. His little force, consisting of four companies of the 1st Ontario Rifles, was encamped about half-way across the portage on a pretty spot of some natural strength. In its front the river, on either flank a deep stream, and in the rear the Hudson's Bay Company's post, abutting on to the main road; so that a surprise by any filibustering party of Yankee-Fenians would not have been so easy to accomplish. On the opposite shore, just across the rapids, half a mile in width, stands the American post of Fort Brady, which is a palisaded enclosure containing a few small guns (not mounted, but used for drill purposes), and garrisoned by 250 men of the 1st United States Infantry (regulars). Previous to the rescinding of the order closing the canal, the American officers had not displayed a kindly feeling, but had done all in their power to obstruct the operations of the expedition. They refused to

allow if hi to b altho been sent stean mucl loads Bu Sault canal open then to ho had Bolte garri and betw Se at tl his tran the fatig

ш.]

### FROM TORONTO TO THUNDER BAY.

43

allow their own tugs to pass through the canal if hired by us, and even declined to allow bread to be baked in their ovens for our soldiers, although the flour for that purpose would have been supplied by us. Bread had therefore to be sent from Collingwood, and the loading of the steamers at the upper end of the rapids was much delayed by the want of a tug to tow the loads to the steamers.

But at the time Colonel Wolseley arrived at the Sault, an order from Washington had re-opened the canal to our shipping, and with it had apparently opened the hearts of our American cousins, who then became most civil and obliging, and willing to help us in any way. This most desirable change had been earefully fostered by Lieutenant-Colonel Bolton and his officers, and consequently the two garrisons were on terms of cordiality and intimacy, and quite an *entente cordiale* had sprung up between them.

Several ship-loads of stores having been landed at the lower end of the rapids, Colonel Bolton and his garrison had had their hands full in unloading, transporting, and re-shipping them. The men of the 1st Ontario Rifles had their initiation into fatigue labour, besides having to furnish guards at

CHAP.

ш.]

the and pass ound good the little 1st cross ural lank Bay oad; y of v to the ican ded not and ates ling  $\operatorname{can}$ but the to

night at both ends of the road and on board the steamers in the river. Much work had been done at the upper end of the road by two parties of Mr. Dawson's men, who were encamped there, and had built two bridges, a small wharf, and a scow capable of holding 400 barrels. One of these parties was composed of Iroquois Indians, engaged as voyageurs, but employed meantime on any work of this description. These men worked capitally; they are plain and simple-minded fellows, obedient and willing, and splendid axemen, and throughout the expedition performed ycomen's service.

As the troops re-embarked at the upper end of the rapids, the scene was full of life and bustle. The river was full of ships engaged in the work of transport, and the picturesque beauty of the scenery was much enhanced by the white tents and open-air gipsy-looking fires of the camps of the Iroquois and Canadian voyageurs; whilst, on the other side of the river, the American town, with its dark background of forest and hill, threw out into bolder relief the white and foaming rapids.

The re-embarkation at the upper end did not take long, and at the same time a company of the 1st Ontario Rifles was put on board the propeller *Shickluna*, as a guard for that vessel and the two scho lade six or 1 Sup illin out a fr all been it w

III.]

CHAP.

The Sup coul A Thy befo littl like for said wor a 1

## FROM TORONTO TO THUNDER BAY,

[CHAP.

III.]

d the done f Mr. l had scow these gaged work ally; lient

d of astle. work the cents os of , on with out s. not the eller two schooners she was towing, the *Pandora* and *Orion*, laden with boats and Government stores. About six miles from the Sault the river St. Mary ends, or rather begins, and the broad expanse of Lake Superior stretches out before the eye apparently illimitable as the ocean. The *Chicora* was soon out of sight of land, and pitching and rolling with a fresh north-east breeze and a heavy swell. To all intents and purposes one might as well have been on the ocean; it was difficult to realize that it was only a fresh-water lake, so enormous is its extent :—

"Where their lakes are like oceans in storm or in rest."

The whole of Ireland might be put into Lake Superior (one is sometimes tempted to wish it could be!) and still leave a fair-sized lake.

At daylight on the 25th the high land of Thunder Cape was sighted a long way off, but before reaching it we stopped at Silver Island, a little bit of a rocky islet peeping out of the water like a pin's head. The islet is just large enough for one building over the shaft of the mine, and is said to be a mass of the richest silver ore. It is worked by an American company, who have erected a mill and buildings on the mainland, half a mile

46

off, and are said to be making a very good thing out of this little solitary rock. Leaving Silver Island, we passed close in shore alongside of Thunder Cape, as the water is very deep. This promontory rises abruptly to a height of 1,350 feet, and is beautifully wooded to the water's edge. The approach to the bay is very grand: on the right, Thunder Cape; on the left, Pie Island (a curious mountain, 850 feet high, shaped like an apple pie); and further on, McKay's Mountain, rearing its massive head to a height of 1,000 feet, a landmark for many miles to voyageurs descending the Kaministiquia River. Thunder Bay, of itself an enormous lake, is but one of the numerous bays which indent the northern shores of Lake Superior. It runs in a N.N.E. direction for some twenty or more miles, and is from twelve to sixteen miles wide. In these regions everything is on such a gigantic scale, that the effect of picturesque beauty is marred. The eye has to travel so far that it loses the idea of the picturesque in that of the grand, and can scarcely realize the enormous height of the hills, owing to the great distance from which they are beheld. Looking from the western shores of the bay, the promontory sixteen miles off seems but like an ordinary hill; it is only when passing

clos of a cond its Bay so t thos win and whic look som on a of w ten shor S the cov Isla Kai of Wi bac of sur

nr.]

[CHAP.

## FROM TORONTO TO THUNDER BAY.

CHAP.

111.]

thing Silver le of This 1,350 ater's rand : sland llike ntain, ) feet, nding elf an bays erior. ity or miles ich a eauty at it f the eight vhich hores eems ssing

close beneath it, and looking up at it from the deck of a vessel, that the mind can form an adequate conception of its vast dimensions, and appreciate its solemn grandeur. The entrance to Thunder Bay is guarded by a long island called He Royale, so that the bay is protected from all winds except those from the south-east. Unfortunately, those winds appear to be the prevailing ones in summer, and when blowing fresh produce a heavy surf, which comes tumbling in in long lines of uglylooking rollers, rendering a landing difficult and somewhat dangerous. There is good anchorage on a smooth sandy bottom in about three fathoms of water, and vessels that do not draw more than ten feet can approach to within 400 yards of the shore.

Steaming quickly across to the western shores of the bay, and passing a group of sandy islands covered with a low serub, called the Welcome Islands, we passed on our left the mouth of the Kaministiquia River, with the clean white buildings of the Hudson's Bay Company's post of Fort William shining clearly out against the dark-green background of foliage, and with the heavy folds of a huge Union Jack floating lazily in the light summer air. About four miles further on a small

CHAP. III.

clearing, with three or four wooden houses and a few tents, marked the beginning of Mr. Dawson's road, the road which was to conduct us to Lake Shebandowan, and so to Fort Garry.

About 10 A.M. on the 25th of May, on a bright and beautiful day, Colonel Wolseley landed on the shores of Thunder Bay, and gave the place the name of "Prince Arthur's Landing," in honour of His Royal Highness, then in Canada. The troops were soon disembarked, a site for the camp selected, and tents pitched; then, stripping to their shirtsleeves, the men turned to with a will, and horses, oxen, waggons, and stores were quickly landed, the soldiers working heartily till past ten o'clock at night.

THE Arthu A tre distric count much Princ destru fire ha which deep. nothi the e But i the f and torme

## нар. 111.

and a vson's Lake

oright on the e the our of roops ected, shirtorses, l, the ek at

## CHAPTER IV.

## AT PRINCE ARTHUR'S LANDING.

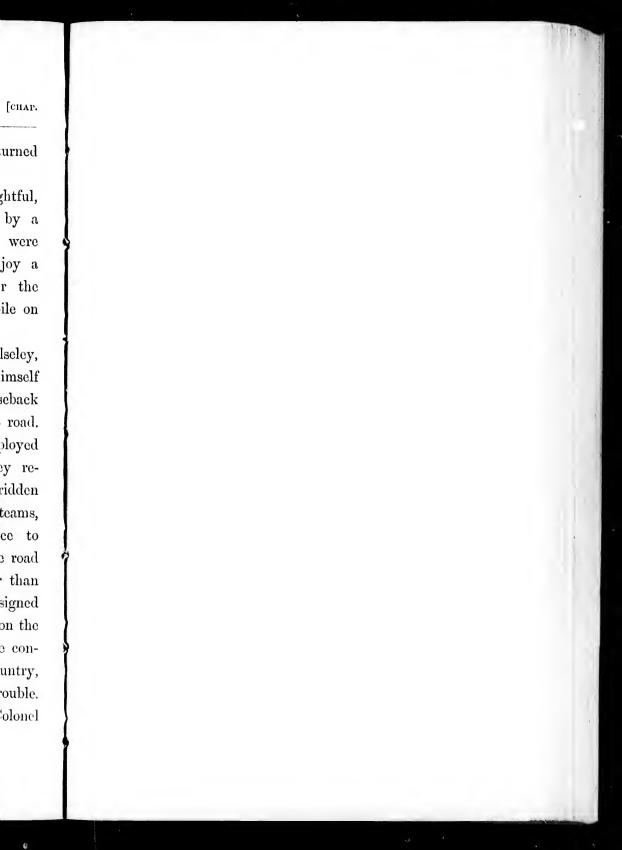
THE first appearance of the country around Prince Arthur's Landing was gloomy and unpromising. A tremendous fire had raged all through this district about ten days previously, devastating the country for hundreds of square miles, and doing much damage to the road. The buildings at Prince Arthur's Landing had been saved from destruction only by the greatest exertions, the fire having burnt as far as the edge of the clearing, which is nowhere more than about 350 yards deep. In place of the green and smiling forest nothing but charred logs and half-burnt trees met the eye, and everything looked black and dismal. But it is an ill wind that blows nobody any good; the fire had destroyed myriads of mosquitoes and black flies, thereby sparing the men much torment and positive pain for some time, until

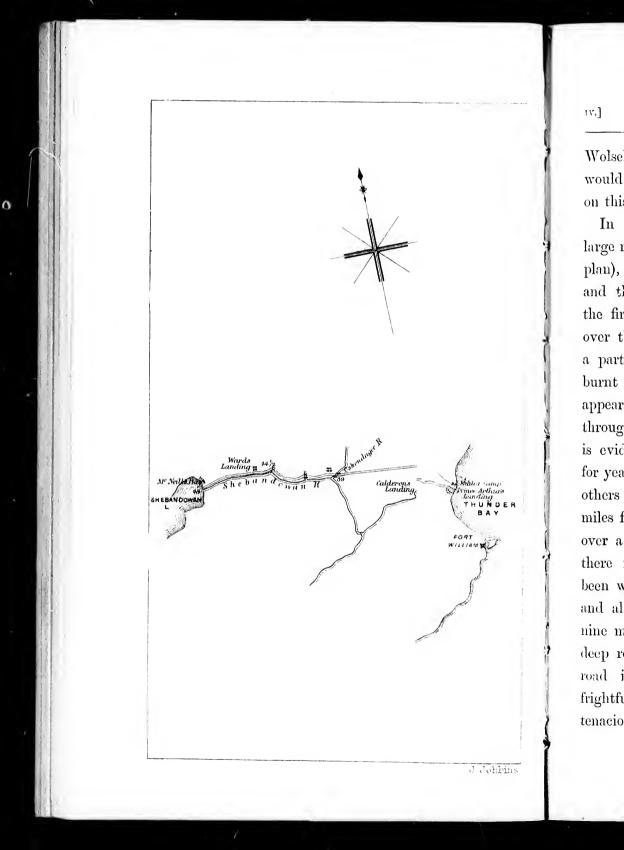
[CHAP.

these pests having recovered themselves returned to their recreation on their human victims.

For the first ten days the weather was delightful, the heat in the daytime being tempered by a cool breeze from the lake; but the nights were cold enough to make one thoroughly enjoy a pipe and a chat round the camp-fire after the labours of the day, and to induce one to pile on the blankets at night.

On the morning after his arrival, Colonel Wolseley, determined to lose no time in making himself master of the situation, started off on horseback to inspect the condition of the all-important road. Mr. Russell, C.E., one of the engineers employed in its construction, accompanied him. They returned at noon on the second day, having ridden as far as the road was then practicable for teams, The whole distance to viz. thirty-one miles. Shebandowan was forty-eight miles, but the road was not intended to be made at first farther than forty-four miles, a footpath only being designed for the last four miles : thus there remained on the 27th of May thirteen miles more of road to be constructed over a hilly and thickly-wooded country, a business involving considerable time and trouble. When at Ottawa, in the month of April, Colonel





51

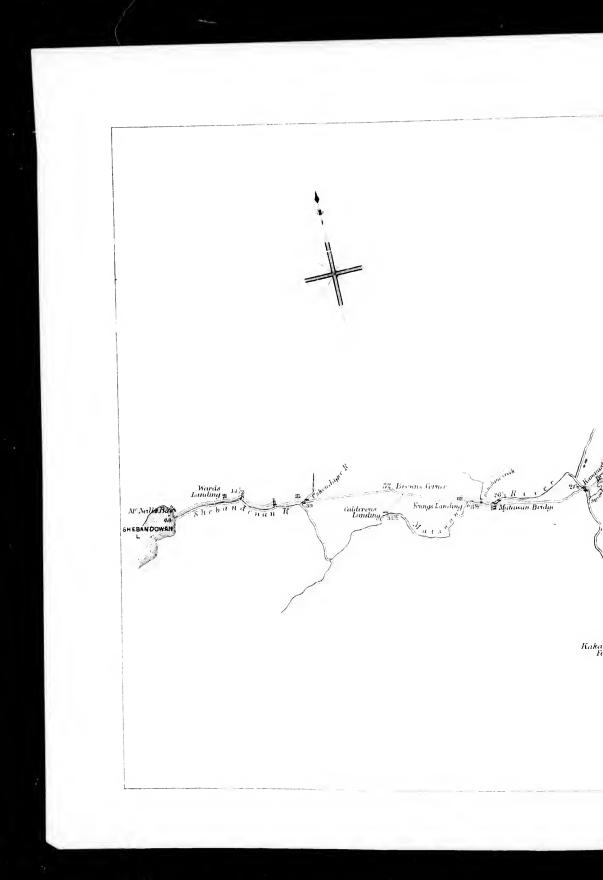
IV.]

Wolseley had been positively assured that the road would be open for traffic by the 25th of May, and on this assurance his calculations had been based.

In this forty-four miles the road crosses three large rivers, (as will be seen by the accompanying plan), at distances of twenty-two, twenty-seven, and thirty-nine miles from Lake Superior. For the first twenty-seven miles, as far as the bridge over the river Matawan, the road runs through a partially open country, the woods having been burnt many times along that district. From the appearance of these brâlés (burnt clearances), through a succession of which the road passes, it is evident that fires have raged over the country for years past. Some of these brilles are extensive, others only cover a few acres. For the first eighteen miles from Prince Arthur's Landing, the road runs over a succession of sandy hills, with here and there intervening bits of swamp, which, having been well ditched and fascined, are hard and dry, and altogether the best portions of the road. For nine miles further the country is very hilly, of a deep red clay soil, which makes a capital hard road in dry weather, but after rain becomes frightfully sticky and almost impassable. Of so tenacious a nature was this red elay, that it was

Jobhins

then



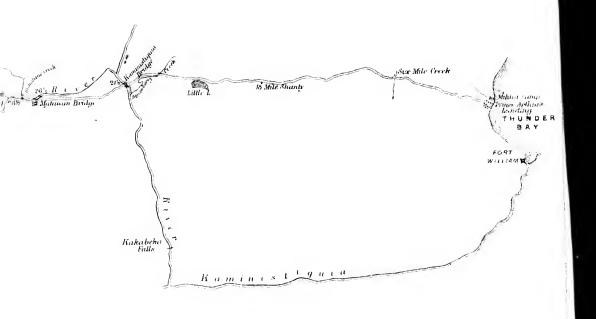
# $\begin{array}{c} P \ L \ A \ N \\ of \end{array}$

.

# 別\* DAWSの別\*S R OAD from Thunder Bay to Lake Shebundewan

Scale, 5 Miles to the Juch

The figures along the Road shew the distances from Thunder Bay



d Jobhus

52

CHAP.

next to impossible to keep the horses properly shod; and after a journey over the road when in this condition, the horses would return with two or three shoes apiece dragged off by sheer force. The next four miles ridden over by Colonel Weiseley were then being worked at, and would be passable for horses and waggons in a few days. Of the remaining thirteen miles eight only had been cut out through the woods as far as the river Oskondagee (where a bridge of seventy-five feet in length had to be built), and, though just passable for an occasional ox-eart, they were utterly useless for anything like regular traffic. The last five miles had not even been marked out through the woods. The fire of the previous week had done a good deal of damage, having burnt several of the smaller bridges and culverts, most of which however had been partially repaired; but the most serious damage done was where the road had been cut out along the hill-sides, the made portion having fallen in owing to the crib-work that sustained it having been burnt through. In some places also much of the fascine and corduroywork had been burnt. Such was the state of the road when the advanced guard of the expeditionary force landed on the shores of Thunder Bay.

0 Algo head They from Frai  $\operatorname{got}$ the v and mana On a absol guara be la On luna, the I tario about quart to as the I and ceede stores move

18.]

On the morning of the 27th, the steamers Algoma and Brooklyn arrived, and landed the head-quarters and four companies of the 60th. They had had a long and disagreeable voyage from Collingwood to the Sault in the steam-ship *Frances Smith*, had lost their way in a fog and got amongst islands, the captain had been drunk the whole time and nearly thrown the ship eway, and indeed it was more by good luck than good management that they had escaped shipwreck. On arriving at the Sault, the drunken captain had absolutely refused to go any further without a guarantee of 65,000 dollars, so everything had to be landed there and forwarded by other steamers.

On the afternoon of the same day the *Shick-luna*, with two schooners in tow, cast anchor in the Bay; she brought a company of the 1st Ontario Rifles, which encamped on a little clearing about six hundred yards N.N.E. of the head-quarter camp. A small tug, hired by Mr. Irvine to assist in discharging vessels, also arrived, and the Bay assumed an unwonted appearance of life and bustle. The unloading of the steamers proceeded energetically, horses, oxen, waggons, and stores of all kinds being rapidly landed and removed each to its appointed place. The men of

CHAP.

IV.]

berly n in two force. lonel vould days. had s the y-five i just tterly e last rough had everal which t the road made -work . In uroyof the spedir Bay.

[СПАР.

the 60th worked till 11 P.M. that night with a hearty goodwill that augured well for the ultimate success of the expedition. The *Algoma* was unloaded, and enabled to start on the return journey that night, thereby avoiding detention charges.

The system pursued in unloading vessels was by means of a large wooden scow, 55 feet long by 15 feet broad, capable of carrying 500 barrels, and when loaded drawing only about 18 inches When calm, vessels could anchor of water. within 300 yards of the shore, and the scow was then hauled backwards and forwards from the vessel to the pier by means of a strong rope. But when blowing fresh from the east or south-east, an ugly surf got up in the Bay, which prevented vessels coming nearer than half a mile or more, and then the scow was towed backwards and forwards by the little tug. At the end of the pier, which was 90 feet long, there was about three and a half feet of water, so that the seow could always come alongside the pier, there being no tide to take into account in these fresh-water The horses were landed in the same seas. manner, twenty at each trip, without the slightest accident of any description. An officer of the Control Department, Mr. Mellish, had been specially and he The some Melli were Whet alway but 1 if an own havin worki indigr comm laugh the a late; the ro As was n quick at on stacke for pi

IV.]

aliy told off for this work of unloading vessels, and from being so constantly on board the scow he acquired the sobriquet of the "Admiral." The heavy old scow had also been christened by some wag the "Water Lily;" and Admiral Mellish, and his flag-ship the "Water Lily," were well known to every soul in the camp. Whether from the force of habit or from being always called the "Admiral," it is hard to say, but Mr. Mellish would become highly indignant if any one interfered with him "on board his own ship." On one occasion, some individual having presumed to give an order about the working of the scow, Mellish called out to him indignantly, "Hold your tongue, sir; do you command this ship, or do I?" The roar of laughter elicited by this question awoke him to the absurdity of the situation, but it was too late; the joke was too good to be lost, and went the rounds of the whole camp.

As soon as each seow-load reached the pier, it was met by strong fatigue-parties of soldiers, who quickly unloaded the stores, and they were removed at once in waggons from the wharf, and carefully stacked in long rows under the hospital marquees for protection from the weather.

нар.

IV.]

i a iltiwas ney

was ong els. hes hor was the ope. ast, ated ore, and the out cow  $\operatorname{eing}$ ater hme test the eci-

CHAP.

Meantime, strong working parties of soldiers, under the direction of one of Mr. Dawson's staff, were employed in cutting a road to the militia camp, and in a very few days a broad straight road, ditched and fascined, was completed. Another party was employed about half a mile from the camp in altering the main road, which had been originally laid out running straight up a very steep sandy hill. By a slight alteration to the right, the hill was "circumvented" at a much easier gradient. A third party was at work to clear a site near the edge of the lake, for a temporary magazine, clearing the ground of stumps and half-burnt logs, &c. Regularity and method were the order of the day in our miniature Balaclava (unlike its prototype !). Everybody had a certain work to do, and did it. No drones were allowed in the hive.

On the 28th, two companies of the 60th were sent up the road, and were stationed at the bridge over the Kaministiquia River, twenty-two miles off, to work on the bad places of the road. At this bridge there was a very large open clearing, fires having evidently swept over it several times for many years past, and Colonel Wolseley deter cons the com 0 towi She and and large bron patte those 200guns The coststeel mai cent and ถร tire Ί by . neig

IV.]

CHAP.

IV.]

liers. son's the oroad comhalf road. ning light cumthird edge aring . &c. the prodo, the were ridge niles At ring, veral

seley

determined to form here a depôt of supplies, in consequence of the safety from fire afforded by the open ground. Stabling for fifty horses was commenced, and a shed run up for the stores.

On the 31st, the steam-ship Clematis arrived, towing a schooner loaded with 35 tons of hay. She brought the detachments of Royal Artillery and Royal Engineers, under Lieutenants Alleyne and Heneage, a battery of mountain guns, and a large quantity of ammunition. These guns were bronze 7-pounders, muzzle-loaders, of the same pattern as the Abyssinian "steel pens," and as those recently made for India. They weighed 200 lbs. each, being 50 lbs. more than the steel guns, but did not require such heavy carriages. They were made out of the old bronze guns, and cost only 10l. or 15l. each, against 44l. for the They were parked in front of the steel guns. main guard, facing the lake, and soon became the centre (literally) of an admiring crowd of aborigines and voyageurs, who, squatting in a circle as near as the sentry would allow them, seemed never tired of gazing at these wonderful objects.

The simplicity of the Indians is well illustrated by a remark made by an old Ojibbeway from the neighbourhood of Fort William, who happened to

 $\mathbf{58}$ 

be at the landing-place that day, attracted, no doubt, by the wonderful stories he had heard about the Pale-faces. Standing on the pier, in a dignified attitude, with folded arms, and his blanket wrapped around him, and showing no outward sign of astonishment, he watched the gunners and sappers landing from the *Clematis*; at last, turning to a friend, he sagely observed, "What a lot of white people there must be in the world!"

On the 1st June the remainder of the 60th arrived in the steamer Union, and on the following day another company of the regiment was sent up to the Kaministiquia Bridge, making the third company now stationed there for work on the road. The first instalment of supplies for the depôt forming there was sent off in waggons, and Lieutenant Hencage, Royal Engineers, designed and commenced a palisaded earth redoubt, 75 feet long by 45 feet wide, to be built round the magazine as a defensive week for the garrison which it was intended to leave behind when the force moved on. Two of the guns were to be mounted on pletforms at the angles of the redoubt, and the work was designed of such strength as to enable the garrison to laugh at any Fenian

atten port taker piece whee as tr boats up, whee piece bow horse plan dama road. Or off in Rive moor This turn at tl twee Brid Brid for

IV.]

• ... •

CHAP.

59

attempts. Platforms were also made for the transport of the boats; the bodies of the waggons, being taken off the wheels, were joined together by stout pieces of timber, so as to leave the fore and hind wheels some distance apart (much in the way as trunks of trees are carried in England). The boats were hoisted on to the platforms, bottom up, and firmly lashed to the stanchions of the wheels with 2-inch rope, the thwarts resting on cross pieces of wood fixed between the wheels, and the bow of the boat projecting over the back of the horses. The driver sat astride on the keel. This plan was adopted to prevent the boats getting damaged by the severe jolting over the uneven road.

On the 3d June the first four boats were sent off in this way to the bridge over the Matawan River, 27 miles, where they were launched and moored in the river to secure them against fire. This precaution on the part of the commander turned out to be a most happy thought, for just at this time another fire swept over the road between Lake Shebandowan and the Kaministiquia Bridge, destroying the shanties at the Matawan Bridge, and all the hay and stores collected there for  $M_1$  D woon's workmen. Some of the de-

CHAP.

IV.]

no eard in a his no the *utis*; ved, e in

30th ving sent thet on the and rned feet ngahich orce ated ıbt, as iian

60

tached parties along the line even lost their tents, and had to run for their lives. The bridges were saved, but here and there portions of corduroy work were consumed, causing further delay in the completion of the road. The danger from fires thus became a serious element to be taken into calculation.

The head-quarters and four companies of the 1st Ontario Rifles joined the force on the 4th; with them also came Lieutenant-Colonel McNeill, V.C., the military secretary to the Governor-General, whose services had been placed at the disposal of the General for service with the expedition. A collar-maker also arrived for the Land Transport Corps, whose services were much needed, as many of the horses were suffering from galled shoulders, arising from badly-fitting harness.

About four miles to the south of Prince Arthur's Landing, the river Kaministiquia falls into Lake Superior. On the left bank, and half a mile from the mouth, stands the Hudson's Bay Company's post of "Fort William," of which Mr. McIntyre is the manager. Fort William was an old post of the North-West Company until the amalgamation of that company with the Hudson's Bay, in blo ene sad Ind of whi is V on eve teri the yar ten abo mĩ inh Ch and pos 100 pipa en

ch

of

iv.]

182

СНАР.

It formerly consisted of three or four stone 1822.block houses, surrounded by a wooden palisade enclosing about fourteen acres of land. The palisade was never required as a protection against Indians, and gradually fell into decay; but little of it now remains, and only one block house, which has been converted into a dairy. The land is very rich, a good deal of it having been cleared on both sides of the river. The scenery is pretty; everything fresh and green, having escaped the terrible conflagration that had lately devastated the surrounding country. The river is about 100 yards wide opposite the fort, and is navigable for ten miles, as far as Point de Meuron. Two miles above the fort on the right bank is an Indian mission, a collection of twenty or thirty log huts inhabited by Indians, who have been converted to Christianity by the Roman Catholic missionaries, and half reclaimed from their wild life. They possess a few cows, and cultivate some patches of potatoes, but live principally by fishing and trapping, and by voyaging for the Hudson's Bay Company. Some of these Indians are sharp-witted enough. One of them, called Shab, was quite a character. Having contrived one day to get hold of a keg of whisky, strictly contrary to the law

[СИАР.

IV.]

tents, s were eduroy in the fires n into

f the 4th; Neill, ernort the the r the much fering tting

hur's Lake from any's ntyre post ama-;, in

which forbids the sale of spirits to the Indians, his priest ordered him to give it up, and on Shab's refusing, reiterated the order, telling him he must obey the orders of his spiritual pastor; upon which Shab immediately declared that he had "turned Protestant," and was no longer under his authority! On another occasion he was detected on Good Friday eating a hearty dinner of meat, and on being reproached with this infraction of rules, and told that no "good Catholie" would do such a thing, Shab replied that he had a good "Catholic heart" but a "Protestant stomach!"

About three and a half miles to the north of Prince Arthur's Landing the Current River falls into the Bay in a succession of very pretty waterfalls. Three miles from its mouth, but away from the river, are rich silver mines worked by a company from Montreal. The recent fire committed sad havoe here, burning down eighteen houses and some stores of hay. By great exertions the mill itself, with its new and valuable machinery lately imported from London, and only erected during last winter, was saved from destruction. The unfortunate miners lost all they had, many of them having barely time to save themselves and their child The took whe had Т rock pens bene lopn iron lastsum were Lan (wh unti refu get rich 1 ling mo pot

wa

fiel

IV.]

CHAP.

CHAP.

IV.]

ndians, nd on g him pastor; he had er his tected meat, netion olic " e had stant

h of falls aterfrom comtted and mill tely ving uniem heir children, so rapid was the advance of the flames. The women and children, to the number of twenty, took refuge in one of the galleries of the mine, where they remained for some time until the fire had passed over.

The northern shores of Lake Superior, though rocky and barren, yet undoubtedly more than compensate for this by the mineral wealth lying hid beneath their surface, awaiting discovery and development by the enterprise of future ages. Copper, iron, lead, and silver have already been found; the last-named metal in great quantities. During the summer of 1870, two metalliterous silver lodes were discovered in the vicinity of Prince Arthur's Landing, for one of which the fortunate owner (who had had the sense to say nothing about it until he had secured the purchase of the land) refused \$60,000 (12,000*l*. sterling), epecting to get a much larger sum, which the extraordinary richness of the ore fully warranted.

The commissariat arrangements f r the victualling of the troops whilst at Thunder Bay were most satisfactory. Fresh bread and meat and potatoes were issued every day; the bread, which was of a most excellent quality, being baked in field ovens at the camp. Live cattle were brought

64

1.00

from Collingwood and slaughtered daily, that the men might be spared the salt pork diet as long as possible. The 60th also opened a canteen, where good wholesome beer and little luxuries of diet were procurable, but no spirits. These were from the first interdicted, with the happiest results. Officers and men lived on the same rations, and, with hard open-air work and famous appetites, siekness was unknown. The daily ration was also largely supplemented by fish, quantities of which were caught by trolling with a spoon in the lake and in the rivers adjoining.

No such thing as a saw-mill existing in the neighbourhood, sawn lumber (Anglice, planks) for building purposes had to be brought from Colling-As soon as it arrived, stabling for the wood. horses and sheds for the commissariat stores were The rapidity with which Canadian commenced. carpenters run up light buildings of this nature would astonish a new arrival from "the old country." A couple of days sufficed to put up a stable large enough for seventy-five horses; and though the work was not very substantial, yet it answered the purposes for which it was required well enough. Storehouses for the immense supplies of perk, flour, &c., were quickly built, and the former secured

The for tl parent horses sters. tion, s from almost with had 1 withou of the care o Some few v better to ma land t cable. discip portar so ne field.

genera

1v.]

from

heat

CHAP.

[CHAP.

18.1

at the ong as where f diet from esults. c, and, etites, s also which e lake

a the s) for llingr the were adian ature countable ough cered ugh. lour, ured from the danger of being spoilt by the excessive heat of a Canadian summer.

The insufficiency of the Land Transport Corps for the work it had to do had early become apparent to the commander. It consisted of 150 horses and half that number of waggons and team-The horses were, with searcely an excepsters. tion, splendid animals; 75 of them had been picked from the Royal Artillery, and the remainder were almost equally good. No transport ever started with a finer lot of animals. But the teamsters had been picked up anywhere and everywhere, without any regard to their qualifications; many of them knew no more about driving or about the care of horses than they did about kangaroos. Some had been bar-keepers, some clerks, and not a few were "decayed gentlemen" who had "seen better days." They were refractory and difficult to manage, being amenable to no discipline. А land transport corps should always, when practicable, be composed of men regularly enlisted and disciplined; only in this way can this most important branch be kept in that state of efficiency so necessary for the movements of an army in the field. For what is the good of an army if the general have not the means of moving it? By

CHAP.

careless driving, by ill-fitting harness, and by the severity of the work, the horses soon began to fall ill, as many as 35 per cent, being at one time on the sick list. To relieve the transport had therefore become an object of much solicitude to Colonel Wolseley, and his attention had been turned to the possibility of sending boats up by the Kaministiquia River. This had been declared by Mr. Dawson and others to be a perfect impossibility, owing to the numerous rapids and falls on that river; but not content with this opinion, Colonel Wolseley consulted Mr. McIntyre, the Hudson's Bay Company's factor at Fort William, who at once pronounced it to be feasible, though difficult. Colonel Wolseley immediately decided on trying the experiment; every boat so sent up represented another waggon released for the transport of stores; each waggon could draw from 18 to 20 ewt., and there were 150 boats to be sent up; consequently it became a serious element of consideration. Accordingly, at 6.30 A.M. on the 4th of June, thirtyfour men of the 60th, under Captain Young and Lieutenant Fraser, started to try to get up to Lake Shebandowan by water. They took with them four flat-bottomed raftsmen's boats, and two heavy Quebec-built boats, with thirty-six days' rations. The t McInt them and r little much ing t interes Expect

IV.]

# [снар,

IV.]

# AT PRINCE ARTHUR'S LANDING.

by the to fall ime on there-Colonel to the uninisy Mr. sibility, n that Colonel adson's rho at ifficult. trying esented stores; t., and uently . Acthirtyg and ) Lake them heavy ations.

The tug towed them to Fort William, where Mr. McIntyre put two Indians into each boat, and gave them his own guide, a man who knew every stone and rock in the river from his boyhood. The little pioneer force, on the success of which so much depended, rowed away up the river, bearing the good wishes of all who were sincerely interested in the success of the Red River Expedition.

# CHAPTER V.

# MR. DAWSON'S ROAD,

THE fine weather which had welcomed the arrival of the expeditionary force, and contributed so much to render everything jolly and pleasant in and about the camp, soon disappeared, and in its place for the next six weeks came heavy and continuous rain and frequent thunderstorms of extraordinary severity.

On the 6th June Colonel Wolseley, accompanied by Assistant-Controller Irvine, made his second inspection of the road, and penetrated to the extreme end of it, 37 miles. He returned on the 8th, having descended the rapids of the Kaministiquia River in a canoe, with the object of judging for himself of the difficulties of the route and its feasibility as a highway for the transport of the boats. To his great delight, he met and the boats turne Colon the g reliev resout portag for di the I length had to at an great, up ag men drenc their severe serve 1 ...7

> of the the cre

> the riv by poli

CILAP.

# MR. DAWSON'S ROAD.

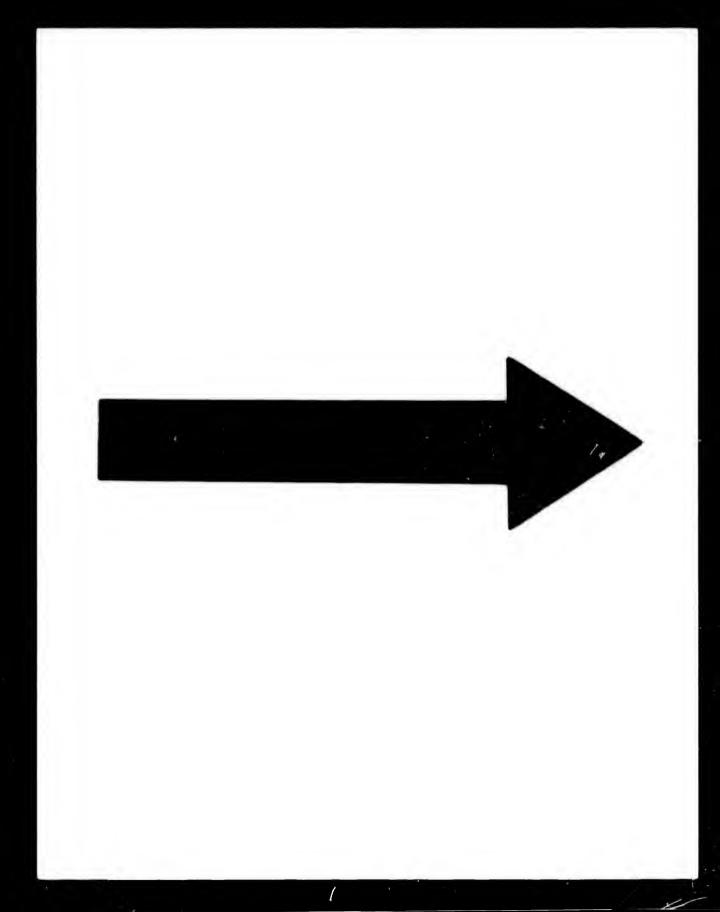
CHAP. V.]

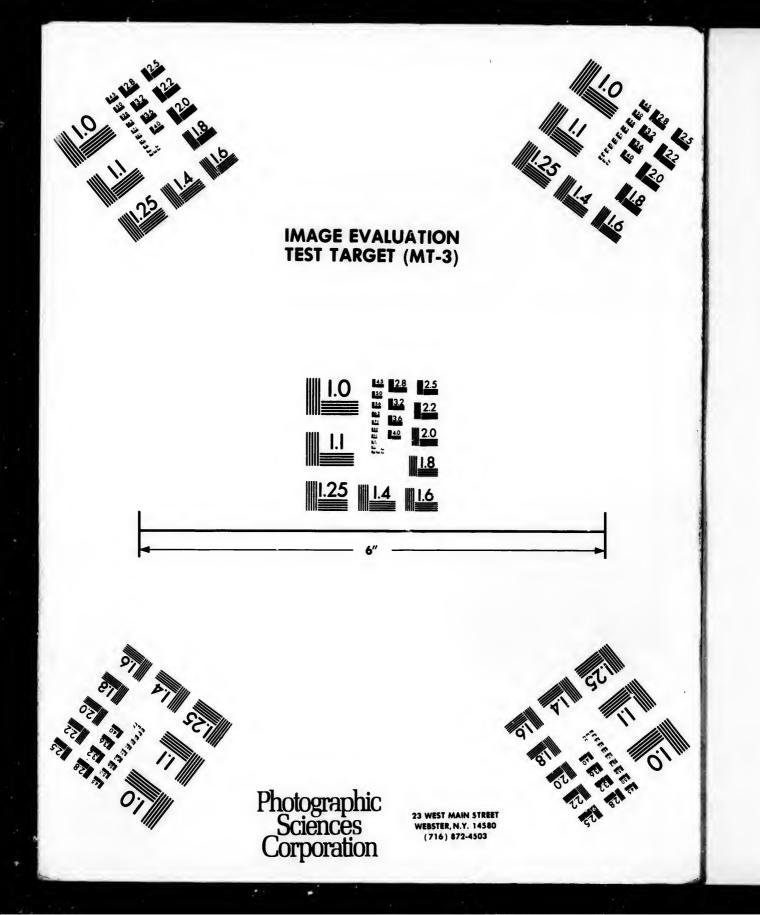
met Captain Young's party just below the bridge, and found that they had successfully surmounted the rapids and falls, and had brought all their boats up without injury. The experiment had turned out a most decided success, so far, and Colonel Wolseley immediately resolved to send the greater part of the boats by this route, and so relieve his transport of a great strain on its resources. Captain Young had cut out all the portages, seven in number, and laid down rollers for dragging the boats over. The portage round the Kakabeka Falls he reported to be a mile in length, for a portion of which distance the boats had to be hauled up a rocky hill, by sheer strength, at an angle of 45°. The labour had been very great, the boats having to be poled and "tracked"<sup>1</sup> up against rapids almost the whole way. The men had been almost constantly wet throughdrenched to the skin by rain, and wading up to their waists in the river. They had also suffered severely from flies, for though each man had been served out at Toronto with a small black veil to

ed the cributed pleasant d, and heavy rstorms

panied second to the ed on of the object of the or the tht, he

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> "Tracking" is done by means of a long rope fastened to the bow of the boat, which is thus hauled up the rapids by three or four of the crew, who run along the bank where practicable, or wade in the river, the remainder of the crew assisting them at the same time by poling.







shield the face from the attacks of flies, yet it was found that, for the actual hard work of tracking and forcing a path along the banks and through the overhanging bushes, these veils soon got torn and useless. But notwithstanding all these trials and hardships, the men were in excellent health, and as cheery as possible. Captain Young got his boats up as far as the Matawan Bridge, beyond which point the Indians declared that it was impossible to take the heavy boats, owing to the incessant falls and rapids.

The result of this successful experiment was, that batches of boats were sent up almost every day, or as often as Indians could be got to take them up, and by the 24th of June 50 boats had thus been sent up to the Matawan Bridge by water.

Meantime the work of forwarding the supplies proceeded steadily though slowly. A piece of ground at the Matawan Bridge was cleared, stabling and sheds hastily run up, and a large depôt of supplies formed there, as being more central than the Kaministiquia Bridge. Every available waggon was used for this purpose; no more boats were sent up by the road, but every effort was made to collect supplies at the Matawan. wei and the ford driv Col La whe em and enc on and I the was ane of stea mu and a (

an

Ma

v.1

The

CHAP.

 $\mathbf{\tilde{70}}$ 

## MR. DAWSON'S ROAD.

[СПАР.

v.]

ies, yet work of nks and ils soon ling all in excel-Captain datawan declared y boats,

nt was, t every to take pats had dge by

supplies viece of cleared, a large g more Every se; no c every atawan. The draught oxen, to the number of 18 span, were sent up from the Bay to the Matawan, and used between that point and the Oskondagee, the road not being passable for horses. A reinforcement of 10 waggons, each complete with a driver and two horses, hired from farmers at Collingwood, was forwarded to Prince Arthur's Landing, at the urgent request of Colonel Wolseley, where they did capital service. The troops were employed on the road, wherever it wanted repair, and companies of the 60th and Militia were encamped all along the line, and worked daily on the road, under the directions of Mr. Dawson and his assistants.

But notwithstanding the energy displayed by the commander, and the hearty way in which he was backed up by officers and men, both regulars and militia, the piles of stores at the Bay instead of diminishing seemed to increase. Each successive steamer brought its load of supplies, which accumulated much faster than they could be sent up.

By the 21st of June, the whole of the troops and stores had arrived at Prince Arthur's Landing; a depôt of supplies was forming at the Matawan, and nearly 70 boats had gone up. But the Matawan was only a little more than half-way

to Lake Shebandowan, and the problem was to get the supplies and boats up the other half. A third inspection of the road was made by Lieutenant-Colonel McNeill, on the 15th, and on the 21st Colonel Wolseley rode over it again himself. He found the road between the Matawan and Oskondagee still practically impassable for waggons. A few drawn by bullocks daily passed over it, but no organized horse-transport in the world could have existed, if ordered to work over it regularly with ordinary loads. There were several places that even on horseback were only passed with difficulty. Beyond the Oskondagee, the road was not yet cut to the Dam Site, five miles further, but large gangs of men were at work on it, assisted by two companies of the 60th.

But this failure of the road must not be attributed to want of energy or zeal, on the part of Mr. Dawson, in pushing it forward. The difficulties he had to contend with were many and serious, and his exertions to overcome them and get the road into working order were untiring. Fires twice raged over considerable portions of it, consuming culverts, crib-work, retaining walls, and corduroy-work. Heavy rains swamped it rep it i a c mal atte be son by it and fase con ove son of wat tea rut on onl the the sti gra ex me

v.]

CHAP.

## MR. DAWSON'S ROAD.

CHAP.

v.]

was to r half. ide by und on again atawan ole for passed in the k over were e only idagee, e, five ere at of the

ot be e part diffiy and a and tiring. ms of walls, ed it repeatedly, carrying away bridges, and rendering it impassable for days. The road, too, passed over a country where the ordinary facilities for roadmaking were not procurable; no metalling was attempted upon it anywhere, gravel was only to be found at a very few places, and for miles in some localities even sand was only to be obtained by carting it from a distance. At many places it was necessary to carry the road over swamps and peat-mosses, where deep drains and heavy fascine work were indispensable. It crossed two considerable rivers and numerous large streams, over which bridges had to be constructed. In some districts it passed through a red clay soil of a most tenacious nature, quite impervious to water. After rain, at such places, the first few teams that passed over it cut it up into frightful ruts; and for days afterwards the wear and tear on horses was so great as to stop all traffic. The only portions that stood continuous traffic were those that had been corduroyed; for, although they were rough and only suited for slow draught, still they were passable in all weathers. The grades were tolerably good, as fair as could be expected where all deep cuttings and embankments had been avoided.

CDAP.

v. ] . ...

tro

fou

det

per

tha

the

be

bli

of

to

fre

rie

da

Ես

th

Wa

to

W

ti

w

tl

el

A

W

iı

Startled by the hopeless nature of the road between the Matawan and Oskondageé, seven or eight miles of which would evidently take a fortnight or more to be in working order, Colonel Wolseley abandoned the idea of sending up stores between those two points, and turned his attention again to the river. The final plan which he adopted was this : at a point called Brown's Corner, five miles beyond the Matawan, he got Mr. Dawson to cut a branch road down to the river, one and a quarter miles, to Calderon's Landing, and put two companies of the 60th on this bit to help the workmen. He organized a naval service under Captain Young of the 60th, who took supplies from the Matawan Bridge in boats, to a point two miles higher up, named Young's Landing : there they were landed and stored under a rude shanty, hastily run up, and were taken on by ox-teams to Calderon's Landing, where they were again embarked, and poled up the river by the 60th to the Oskondagee : from this place they were taken by road five miles further to the Dam Site, where they were again embarked in flat-bottomed boats, and taken up to Lake Shebandowan, four miles further, where they were landed in McNeill's Bay. A path for the

#### MR. DAWSON'S ROAD,

CHAP,

v.]

e road ven or take a Colonel stores tention ich he rown's ie got to the leron's 60th anized f the tawan er up, were y run eron's , and agee : miles again ip to they the:

troops was cut through the woods for this last four miles. All these arrangements, and the little details connected with them, took some time to perfect; and it was not until the first week in July that the branch road to Calderon's Landing, and the road to the Dam Site, were fit for traffic.

This new system, to which Colonel Wolseley had been driven as a make-shift, entailed the establishing of a great number of small posts, at all of which some kind of rude shelter was necessary to protect the provisions from the heat. The frequent change too from boats to waggons, and vice versa, could not but occasion some waste and damage to the barrels by constantly breaking bulk. The labour gone through by the troops at this trying period was most excessive; but it was done in such a cheerful, soldier-like way as to extort the admiration of everyone. Colonel Wolseley himself thus writes of the 60th at this time: "The men and officers have worked in a way that I have never seen soldiers do before; they are all as cheery as possible, and seem to enjoy the life, which is assuredly no easy work." And again: "I have just heard from McNeill, who is encamped at the Dam Site; he is loud in his praises of the 60th, as indeed everyone

must be, who has seen them work here !" The militia, too, vied with their brethren of the regulars, and one and all nobly followed the example set them.

Although the proceedings of the little expedition, which was forcing its way by sheer hard work against all obstacles far away in the depths of the North American wilderness, had attracted but little notice in England, yet amongst military men it was an object of some attention, and a great desire had been manifested to join the expedition amongst some of the more restless spirits in our army, some of that class of men who have not yet, thank God! been driven out of our ranks by the efforts of would-be Army An officer of the ---th Lancers, reformers. Captain M----, being unable to get regular employment with the force, resolved to join it as a volunteer; and, getting a few months' leave of absence, actually crossed the Atlantic, and made his way to Prince Arthur's Landing, anxious to see a little service in these piping times of peace. Though contrary to the orders on the subject, Colonel Wolseley had not the heart to refuse his request after such a long journey, and allowed him to accompany one of the brigades of boats

of Pri the pre but his boa The Col Fal at fee He tar wh at Re Cc ca w nc Μ el

W

v.1

as

It

[сплр.

# MR. DAWSON'S ROAD.

[CHAP.

v.1

The reguumple

cpediwork f the but litary nd a the stless men out rmy cers, gular as a e of b his see eace. ject, his wed oats

as a volunteer, giving him charge of a boat's crew. It was on a pouring wet morning that the brigade of boats which he accompanied started from Prince Arthur's Landing to work their way up the Kaministiquia River: drenched to the skin, presenting a most dejected and forlorn appearance, but full of pluck and resolution to carry out his purpose, the little Lancer stepped into his boat in happy ignorance of what was before him. The next thing that was heard of him was from Colonel Wolseley, who met him at the Kakabeka Falls, still wet through, but manfully hauling away at a rope, and dragging his boat up a hill 120 feet high and as steep as the roof of a house. He had been six or seven days getting that distance, and had scarcely had a dry stitch on him the whole time; he afterwards confided to me, that at that time he had had quite enough of the Red River Expedition, and fully expected the Colonel would have offered him a seat in his canoe back to Prince Arthur's Landing, an offer which he would have jumped at; but, as he did not, he had to go on, and finally reached the Matawan Bridge after a tremendous journey of eleven days. We were encamped at the Matawan when he appeared there, and hailed his arrival

with much pleasure and friendly chaff. One friend hoped he had "enjoyed his pic-nic;" another suggested the advisability of a visit to his tailor; a third hoped he had not caught cold; &c. &c. The rapids of the Kaministiquia had certainly wrought a magical change in the spruce and next appearance of our little Lancer Volunteer. His garments had a most dilapidated appearance, out at knees and elbows, and would scarcely have commanded an excess of gratitude if bestowed on the veriest tramp in England. But he was jolly and hearty, and declared he had never been better in his life, and on the whole rather *liked* being wet through. We were rather amused at a story told of him during this "pleasure trip." He was lying awake in his tent one night, so bothered by the mosquitoes as to be unable to sleep, tired as At last he got up and seized what he he was. took to be the bottle of mosquito oil, and smeared his hands, neck, and face with its contents. Next day at dinner-time, one of the party, when about to help himself to the Harvey Sauce (a great luxury, and carefully husbanded for the sake of the salt pork), cried out, "Hullo! some one's spilt a lot of the Harvey Sauce !" On careful inquiry, poor M---- turned out to be the delinquent.

78

Bul seq and as : of me nol Fanc we sea hay to to of wa tei "t

 $^{\text{th}}$ 

 $\mathbf{n}_{0}$ 

pl

W

ni

1.1

It

whi

CHAP.

[CHAP.

v.]

One -nie ; " isit to cold : a had spruce inteer. rance, 7 have ed on s jolly better being storv e was ed by ed as at he leared Next about great ke of spilt juiry, uent.

It was Harvey Sauce, and not mosquito oil, with which he had anointed himself the night before! But, notwithstanding these little troubles, he subsequently followed the expedition to Fort Garry, and worked his way there like the rest of us, though as a pleasure trip some might think it a curious way of spending four months' leave.

Whilst on this subject of getting wet, I may mention that, though all had to go through it. nolens volens, yet there was one officer of the 60th, F----, who positively appeared to delight in it, and was never thoroughly happy unless he was wet through. He used to wear a pair of untanned seal-skin mocassins, which, being waterproof, would have thereby seriously interfered with his pleasure : to obviate this inconvenience, and I suppose not to give his feet an unfair advantage over the rest of his body, he used to fill these mocassins full of water every night, and place them outside his tent, where they mounted sentry like a pair of "tops" on their trees. Of course the leather got thoroughly soaked with water, and his feet could not by any possibility ever be dry. He was employed with Captain Young on the boat service, where he worked like a horse from morning to night; and being always in and out of the water,

80

tracking up rapids and so forth, he was quite "in his element," and intensely and thoroughly happy. He never appeared to be the worse for this amphibious mode of life, and rheumatism had as yet no terrors for him.

To the north and west of Lake Superior, the country rises gradually to a height of from 800 to 1,100 feet above the level of the lake. This rugged Laurentian country is called the Height of Land, and forms the great watershed of the northern portion of the Continent. Here the waters of the Ottawa, and the northern tributaries of the great lakes, interlace with those flowing into Hudson's Bay. The change is most marked ; once over the dividing line, and every stream and river flows to the west and north instead of to Lake Shebandowan itself is 800 feet the east. above Lake Superior. It may therefore easily be imagined that rivers flowing from this height into Lake Superior, only fifty miles off, must be very rapid. Up this height the boats had to be dragged, and the stores conveyed; some idea may therefore be gained of the labour involved. The yearly rainfall in this section is very great-frightfully great, if the time we spent in this region be any criterion; for, during the month of June, days July swer abou and out nam for t as to tiqui bride to th dism the ] the bodi Fort were that year neve set i sang quest

**v**.]

and

of 1

CHAP.

[CHAP.

v.]

ite "in happy. is amas yet

or, the n 800 This Height of the e the utaries lowing arked : n and of to 0 feet ily be t into very to be may The rightregion June,

and up to the 16th of July, when the first brigade of boats left Sh' bandowan, it rained on fifteen days in June, and on eight out of the sixteen in Thunder-storms of extraordinary severity July. swept over Thunder Bay, recurring on an average about every other day with unpleasant regularity, and accompanied by rain such as is seldom seen out of the tropics. Rightly indeed has it been named "Thunder Bay!" It would rain sometimes for two or three days together in such a manner as to stop all traffic on the road. The Kaministiquia River rose six feet in one night, several bridges were swept away, and much damage done to the road. About this time affairs looked rather dismal, and the chance of ever getting away in the boats seemed more and more distant. Even the most sanguine began to feel gloomy forebodings, for the summer was rapidly passing, and Fort Garry seemed as far off as ever. There were not wanting, too, a few croakers, who declared that the idea of a return from Red. River this year was absurd, and that the expedition would never reach its destination before the winter frosts set in. But throughout all, the commander was sanguine of ultimate success; and to everv question of when the start would be made,

G

# THE RED RIVER EXPEDITION. [CHAP.

replied invariably, "As soon as I have a hundred and fifty boats, and two months' provisions at the Lake."

82

Amongst the many little details of arrangement which had to be provided before leaving Toronto, Colonel Wolseley had had made, and issued to each man of the expeditionary force, a small black veil to protect the face and neck against the bites of flies. These veils were made of very fine black netting, and when put on were kept tight round the head and throat by a bit of elastic; a piece of hoop sewn in the centre kept them off from the face. For ordinary bush-work they answered very well, but soon got torn by the rough work of tracking. A quantity of mosquitooil for anointing the hands, neck, and face, was also provided, and a large canful put into each boat.

These precautions had been taken in consequence of the dreadful tales told about the flies in the Lake Superior region. These flies were of four kinds, mosquitoes, black flies, sand-flies, and deer-flies. The mosquito is so well known throughout almost the whole world (with the exception of our own favoured isle) that it needs no description. The black fly is a small insect, like a very small house-fly, and abounds in

and ticu and pai is is a  $\mathbf{the}$ moi and poli so k awa refr bitt occa Brid 9.30 in s on,

I wa

for

trou

mist

the

**v**.]

the

tor

[CHAP.

v.]

hundred s at the

ngement Toronto, sued to a small against of very ere kept bit of tre kept ish-work by the osquitowas also boat. in conthe flies

the flies es were ind-flies, known the exit needs l insect, unds in

the Canadian woods, where it is a terrible torment. It chiefly attacks the back of the neck, and throat, wrists, hands, &c., but is not particularly fastidious. It draws blood at every bite, and the part bitten swells up and becomes very painful. The black fly, however, bad as he is, is decidedly preferable to the mosquito, for he is a gentleman and goes to bed at night, whereas the mosquito bullies the unhappy victim even more at night than in the daytime. Dead tired, and thoroughly worn out by a long day's rowing, poling, and tracking, in some localities one was so bullied by these intolerable pests as to be kept awake all night; and in place of a sound and refreshing sleep, one would get up in the morning bitten all over, and feverish and cross. On one occasion, I had to ride to the Kaministiquia Bridge with an order, and on arriving there at 9.30 P.M., found the few men who had not turned in sitting round the camp-fire with their veils on, as if they were going to take a hive of bees. I was rather inclined to laugh at these precautions, for at Prince Arthur's Landing we were not troubled with flies, but I soon found out my mistake: very little sleep did I get that night; the mosquitoes held high jubilee over me, and

84

CHAP.

never did I feel more inclined to cry out with the Psalmist, "Would God it were morning!" At the first streak of daylight I crawled out from my wretched lair, and plunged into the river to relieve my heated and feverish frame. Those who have not experienced the mosquito in his native fastnesses, can have no idea, no conception of an idea, what an intolerable nuisance he can make himself. I was once enjoying an evening's fishing on a charming little trout stream; the trout were biting freely, but so were the mosquitoes, which swarmed around me in myriads, fastening cagerly on wrists, hands, and face. Tempted by the sport, I continued fishing, until my eyelids were so swollen that I could scarcely see out of my eyes; at last, in despair, I fairly made a bolt of it, and ran away without waiting to put up my rod, regularly put to flight by the mosquitoes. The third species of plague we had to contend against were sand-flies. These minute insects, so small as to be scarcely perceptible, are great torments: no veil or netting will keep them out; they are so small that they can crawl through anything. Their bite is as if you had been rubbed over with cayenne pepper; you feel a sudden burning, and have some difficulty in discovering the Can fly i of a

take

and

becd

nigh

atte

to n

Frei

disa

v.]

our nigh hope O arriv insp rode and He the

of b

agai

exce

the enemy, so diminutive is he. The French Canadians very aptly call them brâlot. The deerfly is a large mustard-coloured insect, three-quarters of an inch long, and furnished with nippers. He takes a piece of flesh right out when he bites, and will fight you like a wasp or a bee. Horses become perfectly mad from their bites. Towards nightfall the mosquitoes and sand-flies are especially attentive, and the only way to escape them is to make a big smoke,---" faire un boucane," as the French say,—and sit in it; a remedy scarcely less disagreeable than the disease. We used to smoke our tents out regularly before turning in at night, and if you did not do so, woe to your hopes of sleep!

On the 29th June, the Lieutenant-General arrived at Prince Arthur's Landing, on a visit of inspection; and, accompanied by Colonel Wolseley, rode over the whole road as far as the Dam Site, and went up to Lake Shebandowan in a canoe. He returned by the river Kaministiquia, running the rapids in a canoe. In his passage down the river the Lieutenant-General passed four brigades of boats, at different places, working their way up against the rapids. The labour at this time was exceptionally severe, owing to the excess of water

[CHAP.

v.]

it with ming!" it from viver to se who native ı of an n make fishing ut were which eagerly by the ls were of my bolt of up my quitoes. contend ects, so e great m out; gh anyrubbed sudden overing

86

CHAP.

in the river, which had become so deep that it was difficult to pole; and, as the banks were flooded, tracking was extremely difficult and The former tracking path, cut by laborious. previous boats' crews, was three feet under water. One of these brigades, having camped one evening on an island, was compelled by the rising of the river to take to their boats in the middle of the night, and cross to the mainland; next morning the island was not to be seen! In its place was a foaming rapid. For four days no waggon train of supplies could be sent up the road. The Lieutenant-General left again on the 4th of July, by steamer. His visit was of great benefit to everyone, and as he arrived in the midst of a very severe storm, he was fully enabled to judge of the difficulties which the men of the expedition were contending against, on the road and on the river.

At the time that the Lieutenant-General arrived at the Matawan, on his visit of inspection, I happened to be present, and was much amused at the dress in which the inspecting officer was received, by Captain Young, who was then at his daily work in the boats taking supplies up the river. His dress consisted of but three articles: a r the to up by stoc poli At its the dail it feet van poi had the Fma wa wei ( Th boa of he

v.]

a red woollen night-cap; a flannel shirt, open at the throat and chest, with the sleeves rolled up to the elbows; a pair of duck trousers tucked up to the knees, and confined round the waist by a leathern belt and sheath knife; no shoes or stockings, and a pipe in his mouth, which he politely removed to shake hands with the General! At this time the Matawan River had overflowed its banks; the water was a foot deep right under the rude table on which the officers ate their daily rations of salt pork and biscuits; in fact, it was a matter of some difficulty to keep your feet out of the water. But this, too, had its advantages, when looked at from the "Mark Tapley" point of view; for, when you were thirsty, you had nothing to do but dip your tin cup under the table and bring up a cupful of water. F---- used to enjoy it very much, as he never made any attempt to keep his feet out of the water, and was able to be in his normal state of wet without extra trouble.

One more anecdote about "Jack Young." Though always the first man to jump out of a boat in a rapid, utterly regardless of the depth of the water, and generally wet to the waist, yet he had the old soldier's knack of keeping his

[СИАР.

v.]

that it s were lt and cut by water. evening of the of the norning ice was on train 1. The of July. nefit to st of a o judge expediand on

arrived tion, I amused cer was at his up the urticles:

[CHAP.

v.]

is

Ma

im

Inc of

Pr wil

all

pro

pai

to

abo

Pr

P

R

at

W

e

te

V

r

t

pipe and matches dry, and was always ready with a light for anybody's pipe. One day he had been up to his chin in the river, and on getting into the boat again, was asked by one of the men (who thought to take a "rise" out of him) for a light for his pipe. He immediately pulled off his woollen night-cap, in the loose end of which he had stowed his pipe and tobacco and matches, and gave the man a light for his pipe! Is it a matter of wonder that the men, who always take their cue from the officers, worked as they did, with hearty good-will and good humour?

Mr. Donald Smith, who had succeeded the late Mr. McTavish as Governor of the Hudson's Bay Company, had arrived at Fort William on his way to "Norway House," and to him Colonel Wolseley entrusted the delivery of a proclamation, which he had drawn up, to the Red River people. Mr. Donald Smith undertook to send it into the settlement, by a safe hand, from Fort Alexander, at the entrance to Lake Winnipeg. The proclamation was as follows :—

### TO THE LOYAL INHABITANTS OF MANITOBA.

Her Majesty's Government having determined upon stationing some troops amongst you, I have been entrusted by the Lieutenant-General commanding in British North America, to proceed to Fort Garry with the troops under my command.

CHAP.

v.]

ready ne had getting e men ) for a off his ich he es, and matter e their l, with

ne late 's Bay on his Colonel nation, people. to the tander, clama-

tationing utenantto Fort Our mission is one of peace, and the sole object of the Expedition is to secure her Majesty's sovereign authority.

Courts of Law, such as are common to every portion of her Majesty's Empire, will be duly established, and justice will be impartially administered to all races and all classes; the loyal Indians and Half-breeds being as dear to our Queen as any other of her loyal subjects.

The force which I have the honour of commanding will enter your Province representing no party either in religion or politics, and will afford equal protection to the lives and property of all races and all crecds.

The strictest order and discipline will be maintained, and private property will be carefully protected.

All supplies furnished by the inhabitants to the troops will be duly paid for.

Should any one consider himself injured by any individual attached to the force, his grievance shall be promptly inquired into.

All loyal people are earnestly invited to aid me in carrying out the above-mentioned objects.

(Signed) G. J. WOLSELEY, Coloncl, Commanding Red River Expeditionary Force.

PRINCE ARTHUR'S LANDING, THUNDER BAY, June 30th, 1870.

Copies of this proclamation were sent to the Protestant and Roman Catholic Bishops at Red River, and to the Hudson's Bay Company's officer at Fort Garry; and, at the same time, Colonel Wolseley urgently besought these gentlemen to endeavour to open up a cart-road from Fort Garry to the north-west corner of the "Lake of the Woods," a distance of about ninety miles. At the request of Colonel Wolseley, Mr. Dawson wrote at the same time, urging the immediate commence-

ment of this work, and promising that the Public Works' Department would defray the expenses of such road. Little or nothing, however, was done, and the troops eventually had to descend the dangerous rapids of the Winnipeg River, and make a long circuitous voyage round the southern shores of Lake Winnipeg, and up the Red River.

The serious number of horses rendered unfit for work through collar-galls, had induced Colonel Wolseley to request that twenty sets of straps, for converting double-collar harness into breastdraught harness, should be sent him. Through some misunderstanding at Montreal, in the absence of the Lieutenant-General, only seven breast-straps were sent, and these were of the kind used in field batteries, for the non-commissioned officers' horses, only intended to assist gun teams for a short distance over difficult ground, and quite unfitted for heavy and continuous draught. Had the twenty sets applied for been sent, it would have enabled our transport to make use of forty horses daily more than they were then doing, for we had constantly that number of horses on the sick list, incapacitated for work owing to galled shoulders, but otherwise in good working condition.

т

90

the

La

Sh

ca

0s

ba

n

uı

bo

 $\mathbf{T}$ 

al

m

a

 $\mathbf{t}$ 

t

V

**v**.]

CHAP.

[СПАР.

**v.**]

e Public enses of s done, nd the er, and outhern River. l unfit Colonel straps, breasth some nce of -straps sed in officers' for a te unad the have horses or we e sick galled conIn organizing a horse-transport service, this subject is well worthy of attention; at least 20 per cent. of the harness provided should be fitted for breast-draught, so that the moment a horse shows signs of a collar-gall, the collar may be replaced by the breast-straps, and *vice versd*. By these means, if due care be taken, no horse need ever be on the sick list from galled shoulders.

On the 5th July, Colonel Wolseley moved his head-quarters to the Matawan Bridge, and on the 13th advanced to the Dam Site or "Ward's Landing," 175 miles further, and three miles from Shebandowan Lake. At this late period, the socalled "road" between Brown's Corner and the Oskondagee, a distance of seven miles, was still very bad. In many places it was almost impassable, nothing but a track through the woods, unditched, uncorduroyed, and with stumps of trees and boulders of rock still in the centre of the "road." The wisdom of Colonel Wolseley's resolution to abandon the use of this part of the road as a means of transporting his supplies, and to devote all his energies to the utilization of the river, was thus amply proved. Had he waited for this part of the road to be in working order, the expedition would have been still further delayed, and might

# THE RED RIVER EXPEDITION. [CHAP.

v.]

bef

as

The

any

is

the

of

on

have been still struggling through the portages and rapids of the Winnipeg; in any case, the regular troops could not have returned this summer, but must have wintered at Fort Garry.

About this time (5th to 10th July) the whole of the force was scattered about all along the line, both on water and on land. Some were working on the road, encamped by companies, wherever repairs were required; some were taking boats up the river to the Matawan Bridge, some were taking stores from the Matawan to Young's Landing, and others from Calderon's Landing to Ward's Landing. To feed these numerous detached parties all along the road was no easy matter, and took up a great deal of the available transport; but Mr. Irvine's arrangements were so good, and he was so well backed up by Captain Nagle and those under him, that there was never any complaint made of want of rations. Field bakeries were established at Prince Arthur's Landing, at the Matawan, and at Ward's Landing; and the bread baked by the men of the Army Corps was most excellent.<sup>1</sup> Service Colonel Wolseley writes on the 16th July: "I have never

<sup>1</sup> The Field oven put up at Ward's Landing turned out in twelve hours 470 rations of bread, in  $1\frac{1}{2}$  lb. loaves.

[CHAP.

v.]

portages ase, the ed this t Garry. e whole ong the ne were npanies, taking e, some Young's ding to etached matter. vailable vere so Captain s never Field rthur's nding; Army Colonel never n twelve

before been with any force in the field so well fed as this one has been up to the present time. The rations are good and ample; the absence of any spirituous liquor, as part of the daily issue, is marked by the excellent health and spirits of the men; and, I may add, by a remarkable absence of crime!" Great praise indeed, coming from one so well qualified to judge!

# CHAPTER VI.

CIL

ba soi she thi an lea *di* 

> of ge

se ta

an

ga

VC

to

co

pa

ig

th tl

> w ti

> L

b

t

#### THE START FROM SHEBANDOWAN.

ALTHOUGH the failure of the road had occasioned much delay, through the necessity of conveying the boats by water, yet as there is seldom any evil in this world without its attendant good, so it had been of much service to the troops, in accustoming them to the boats, and breaking them in to the severe labour of poling and tracking. It had also been the means of opening the eyes of the officers to the deficiencies of the voyageurs. As has already been mentioned in a former chapter, these men were a motley crew, collected from all parts of Canada, without much regard to their qualifications as boatmen. The Iroquois Indians, and some of the Lower Canadians from Three Rivers, were about the only good boatmen out of the lot, and, as rations had to be carried in the boats for every man who em-

#### CHAP. VI.] THE START FROM SHEBANDOWAN.

barked at Shebandowan, so it became an object of some importance that none but skilled voyageurs should be taken. The most stringent orders on this head had been issued by Colonel Wolseley, and officers commanding brigades were directed to leave at the first portage they came to, all soidisant voyageurs whom they found to be incapable of managing boats. The object of having voyageurs was not to pull an oar, a duty which the soldiers were quite competent to perform, but to take the management of the boats in rapid water, and to instruct the soldiers. Many men had engaged themselves under the high-sounding title of voyageurs, with the object of working their passage to Red River by their manual labour at the oar; consequently, when they had to take hold of a paddle or a pole, they were found to be quite ignorant of its use. Numbers of them were therefore rejected, and not allowed to embark in the boats, greatly to their disgust.

The Indian voyageurs, the Iroquois, were well worthy of the name, and were employed for a long time in taking up boats and stores from Ward's Landing to McNeill's Bay, a distance of three miles, but a very hard bit of water, there being no less than six rapids in that short distance. Their

15

casioned ying the v evil in it had stoming to the ad also ficers to already en were Canada, is boat-E Lower he only ons had ho em-

CHAP.

"boss," old Ignace, was a fine old fellow, one of Nature's noblemen; most dignified, quiet, and gentlemanly, and a splendid man to steer a boat down a rapid. He had been one of Sir George Simpson's men, and had also accompanied Dr. Rae in his Arctic explorations. He had grey eyes, a very rare feature in an Indian. His men obeyed him readily, and when any little thing was wanted from them, a word from Ignace was sufficient. They required, however, careful treatment, as they were quite aware of their own importance to the expedition, and though inclined to work hard, yet not unnaturally objected to extra hours. Every day being of importance, they were ordered to continue their work on Sundays, which at first they flatly refused Their objections were got over by the proto do. mise of an extra day's pay for the extra day's work; and thus was the Indian tempted by his white brother to violate the convictions By dint of energy and hard of his conscience. work, boats and provisions were forwarded rapidly to McNeill's Bay, as fast as they arrived from the Oskondagee: each boat, before it was sent up, being thoroughly overhauled by the boat-carpenters, and the damages sustained in the passage up the rapids carefully repaired.

Wo mad app was for cam cha afte cess Joll into mer the mu mer Poo that ley' staf app ing had con othpar

v1.]

### THE START FROM SHEBANDOWAN.

97

The 16th July had been the day fixed by Colonel Wolseley some time before, for the first start to be made from Lake Shebandowan, but as the day approached it became very doubtful whether such was possible. Lieutenant-Colonel McNeill had been for some time at the lake, and had pitched his camp on the shores of a pretty little bay with a charming sandy beach, which had been named after him, "McNeill's Bay." Here he had been incessantly at work, assisted by Mr. Myer and Mr. Jolly of the Control Department, getting things into order; and as far as the military arrangements were concerned, everything was ready for the despatch of the first three brigades. But much confusion reigned in the eivilian department-boats, voyageurs, boat-gear, and guides. Poor Mr. Dawson worked untiringly, and did all that one man could do to carry out Colonel Wolseley's wishes, but he had a weak and inefficient staff of assistants, only one of whom, Mr. Graham, appeared to be of any use. The boats kept arriving in batches at McNeill's Bay, and Mr. Graham had to overhaul them and fit each one with its complement of masts, sails, rowlocks, oars, and other gear. There was great confusion in this department, many of the things not having been sent

[CHAP.

, one of

und gen-

nt down

impson's

in his

ery rare

readily,

n them.

equired,

e quite

edition,

unnatu-

being of

e their

refused

he pro-

i day's

ed by

victions

d hard

warded

urrived

t was

y the

ed in

paired.

VI.]

[CHAP.

up from Prince Arthur's La. ...d the boatsails having been used for the last two months as tents for the numerous working-parties all along the road; the result was that the soldiers had to do all the work themselves, and worked hard all day on the 16th cutting masts, bending sails, and fitting oars to rowlocks, &c. The scene at McNeill's Bay was full of bustle and excitement; boats were loading at the little wharf, others drawn up on the beach to be fitted with masts and sails, others that were loaded and ready were moored at a little distance from the shore. Tents were being struck and packed, and the last preparations made for the long-looked-for embarkation. About five o'clock in the evening Colonel Wolseley himself went up to the lake to superintend the final departure. At that hour it appeared quite hopeless to get the brigades off that day, but Colonel Wolseley reiterated his orders, and declared that the boats must start, if they had to go on working till midnight. By degrees each boat got on board its complement of stores,<sup>1</sup> and dropped out and moored in the bay to make way for the next one, but it was half-past eight o'clock in the evening before they were all ready to

<sup>1</sup> See Appendix D for a list of stores embarked in each Brigade at Lake Shebandowan.

an of  $^{\text{th}}$ Li un Ea or pre at the" ( tinwo  $\operatorname{Br}$ wi thean bo tinma of the wł gli

VI.

st

# THE START FROM SHEBANDOWAN.

CHAP.

vı.]

ie boatonths as ll along had to hard all ails, and IcNeill's its were p on the iers that a little g struck e for the o'eloek ent up to At that gades off s orders. if they degrees stores,1 to make st eight ready to Brigade at

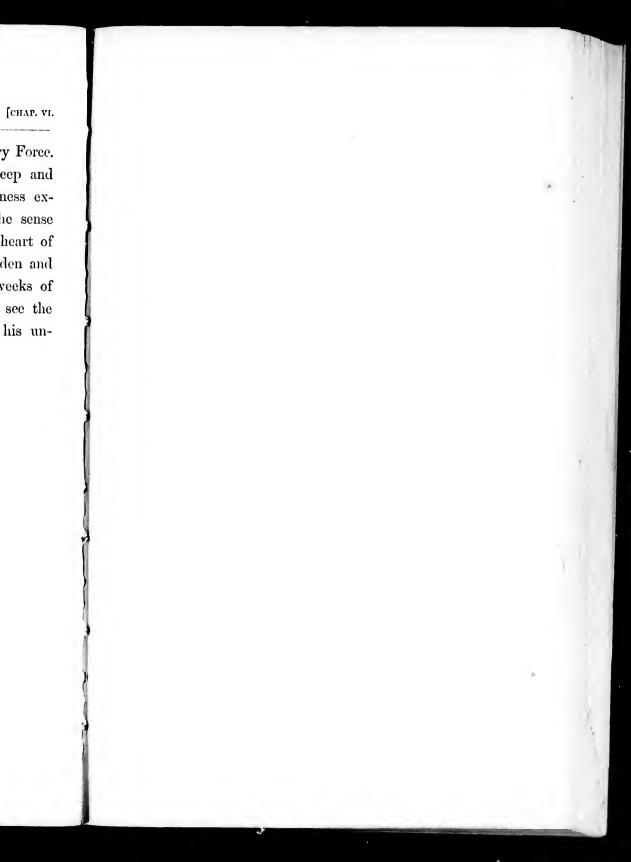
There were three brigades of boats, A, B, start. and C, seventeen in all, containing two companies of the 60th, under Captains Young and Ward, and the Royal Artillery and Royal Engineers, under Lieutenants Alleyne and Heneage, the whole being under the command of Colonel Feilden of the 60th. Each boat had two voyageurs in it, besides eight or nine officers and soldiers, and carried sixty days' provisions for all its crew. The men were delighted at the prospect of getting away, and cheery were the farewells to less fortunate comrades left behind. "Good-bye, Jim. No more poling now for some time." "Hurrah for Fort Garry!" and the silent woods rung for the first time to the echoes of a British cheer.

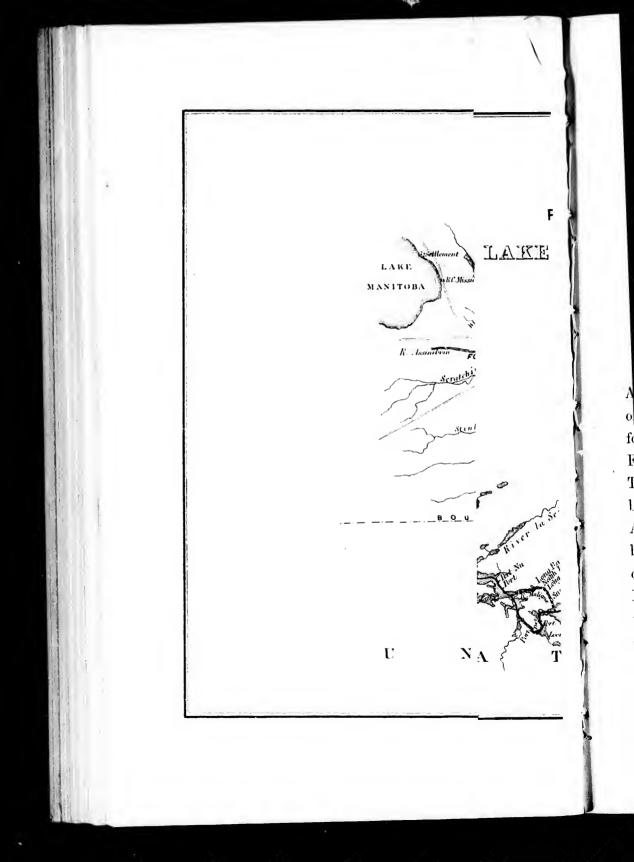
It was an evening of surpassing loveliness; the wind, which had been blowing fresh all day from the west, had gone down, and the lake lay calm and smooth as a mirror, reflecting in its placid bosom the varied tints of a mellow sunset, which tinged the fleecy clouds with wondrous hues. The measured dip of the oars, and the last faint hurrahs of the boats' crews, alone broke the calm glory of the summer evening, as we stood on the little wharf and strained our eyes to catch the last glimpse of the fast disappearing boats, the vanguard

н ?

# THE RED RIVER EXPEDITION. [CHAP. VI.

and pioneers of the Red River Expeditionary Force. "Thank God! they are off at last." Deep and fervent were the ejaculations of thankfulness expressed by every one, but to none did the sense of relief come home so directly as to the heart of the Commander, who, having borne the burden and heat of the day during the last trying weeks of suspense and anxiety, at length began to see the fruition of his hopes, and the reward of his unremitting toil and anxious care.





# CHAPTER VII.

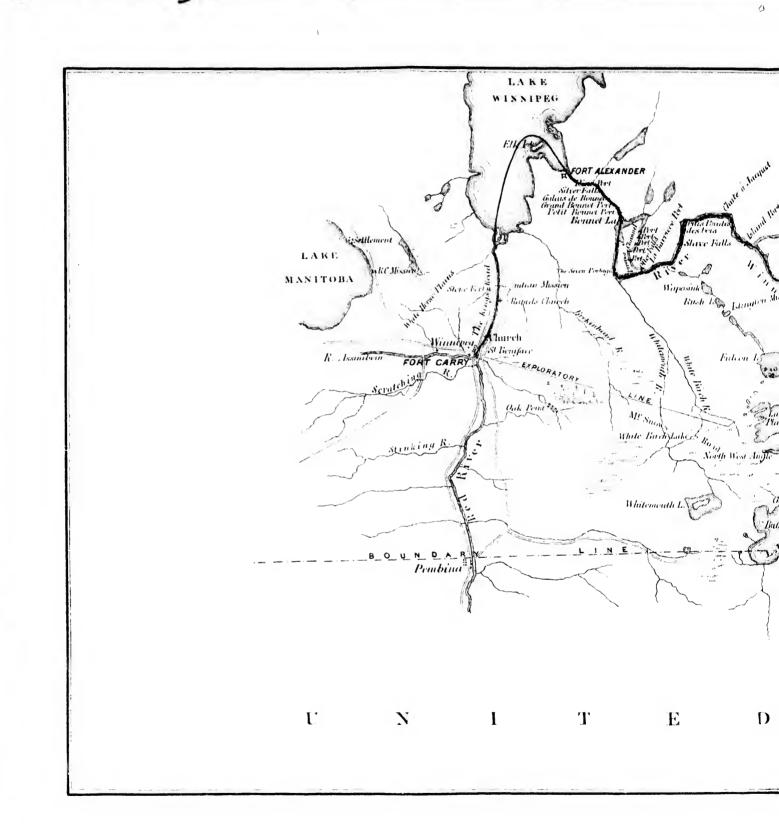
LARE

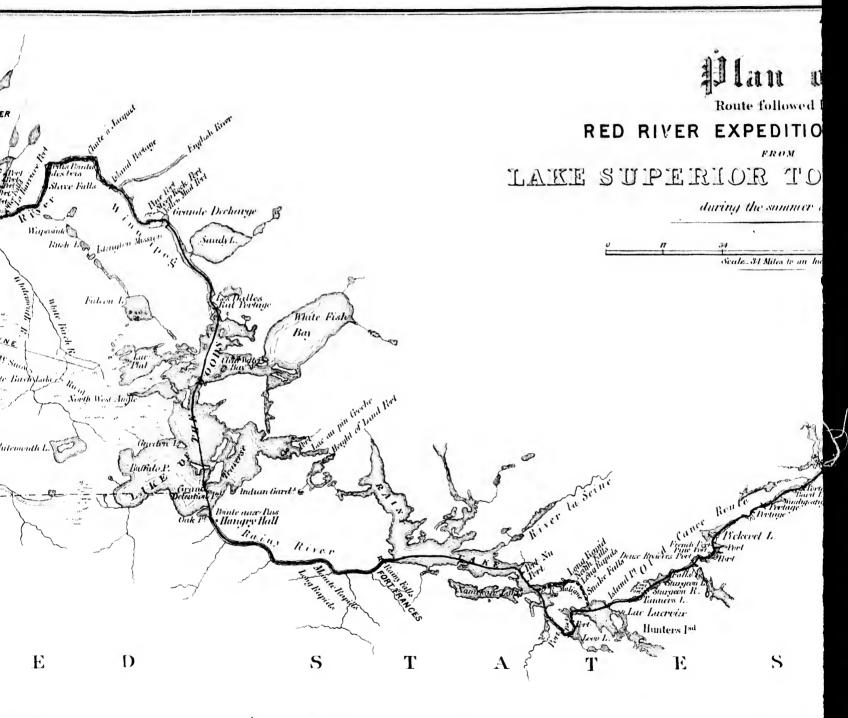
# EN VOYAGE.

"Arma virumque cano." "Arms, men, and canoes." - Free Translation.

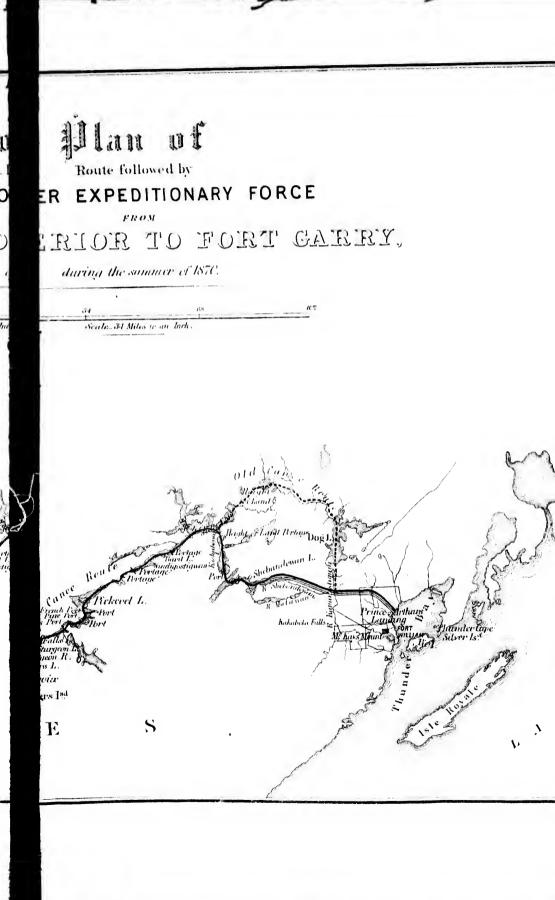
AT last the ice was fairly broken. The departure of the first three brigades on the 16th of July was followed by two more, D and E, on the 17th, F on the 18th, G on the 19th, and so on. The whole force was divided into twenty-one brigades, which were distinguished by the letters A, B, C, &c., each brigade being composed of six boats.<sup>1</sup> The companies of the 60th followed each other in quick succession, then the 1st Ontario Rifles, and lastly the 2nd Quebec Rifles. Lieutenant-Colonel McNeill, V.C., remained at Shebandowan, superintending the embarkation until the whole of the brigades had left, when he and Mr. Jolly of the Control Department followed in a light

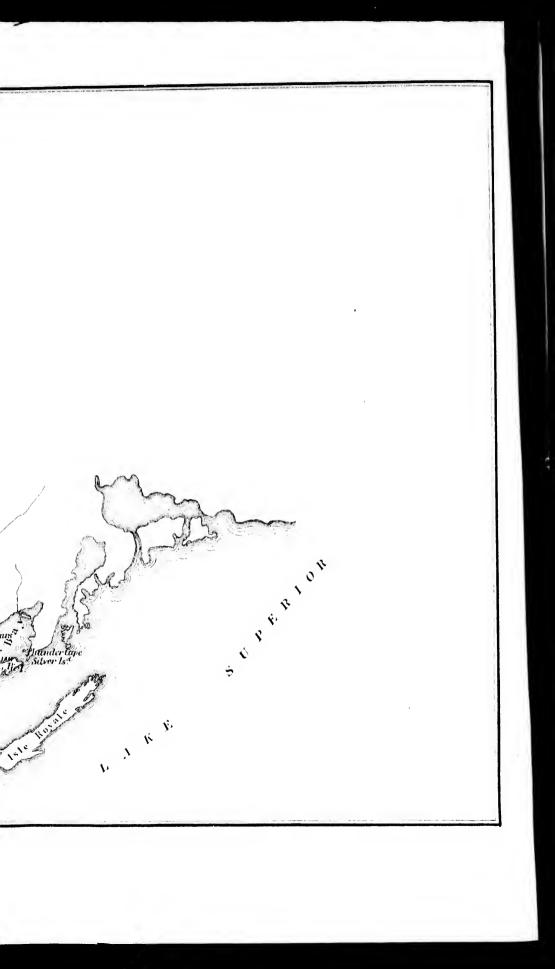
<sup>1</sup> See Appendix E.





 $\mathcal{O}$ 





bark canoe. By the 1st of August the last brigade, X, had embarked. On this day the leading brigades had reached Bare Portage, 150 miles from McNeill's Bay, the other brigades being scattered along the intermediate distance. Colonel Wolseley himself remained until he had seen the whole of the regulars and the first two brigades of militia embark, and then started himself on the 23rd of July, accompanied by Mr. 'cvine, in a birch-bark canoe, manned by Iroquois Indians, to catch up Colonel Feilden and the leading detachment.

The route followed by the force (as will be seen by the accompanying sketch) differed slightly at the commencement from the old canoe route of the Hudson's Bay Company. The new route, first discovered by Mr. S. J. Dawson, passed through Lakes Shebandowan and Kashaboiwe, crossed the Height of Land by one of the lowest passes, and turning westward into Lac des Mille Lacs there joined the old canoe route, which it followed for the remainder of the way to Red River.

To attempt to describe for the benefit of the general reader the scenery and incidents of the route, it is necessary to relate what I myself actually saw and did, at the risk of the too frequent repetition of the word "I." Accordingly, at half-past six on in ten of oth Iro had lieu the as eve litt the scel per thin day off. our She lon by noi lan  $\mathbf{the}$ rep

VIL

CHAP.

#### EN VOYAGE.

(CHAP.

vn.]

rigade, eading miles being olonel en the des of 23rd a-bark ch up

e seen ily at of the t dis-Lakes feight rning d the inder

the the ually petit six

on the evening of the 21st July, I left McNeill's Bay in Colonel Wolseley's gig, accompanied by Lieutenant Denison of the Canadian Militia and a crew of six men, four of whom belonged to the 60th, the other two being voyageurs, one of them an old Iroquois Indian. We had no guide, for Mr. Dawson had failed to procure any from Fort William, but in lieu of a guide we had a rough tracing on paper of the configuration of the first two lakes and portages as far as Lac des Mille Lacs. It was a lovely evening, and as we pulled quietly along and set our little lug-sail to a favouring breeze, the novelty of the situation as well as the picturesqueness of the scenery were most inviting. Here we were, eight persons in a small gig (a very jolly little craft about thirty feet long and pulling six oars), with thirty days' provisions, bound for Fort Garry, 600 miles off. None of us had ever been there before, and our only guide was a map and a compass. Lake Shebandowan is about twenty miles long, a large, long lake, or rather three long lakes joined together by narrow channels. We were told to hug the north shore, which we did until nightfall, when we landed at the first likely spot and bivouacked for the night. The north shore of the lake has been repeatedly swept by fires at various intervals for

CHAP.

v11.

ori

de

Ro

sio

am

pie

we

th

ha

ne

loı

roa

sk

ov

de

le

of

p

tl n

v

ľ

l

i

many years past; and the blackened and branchless trunks of trees left standing here and there, sometimes in great numbers, present a strange weird appearance, like ghostly witnesses of a bygone vegetation. On the south shore the woods have been little injured by fire, but their growth is small, bespeaking a poverty of soil, which is fully borne out by the patches of bare rock cropping out here and there, covered with a scanty growth of moss. Wild raspberries are abundant, flourishing best on the burnt districts. All these Canadian lakes are very much like one another, and when covered with islands and indented with deep bays it is most difficult to find one's way about them. We lost our way twice on Lake Shebandowan, but fortunately soon recovered the right track, and reached the east end of the portage road which leads into Kashaboiwe Lake, about 10 A.M. on the 22nd.

Here we found three brigades, one occupied in portaging <sup>1</sup> its boats and material, and the other two waiting for their turn to do the same. The stoppage

<sup>1</sup> As the word "portage" will be found frequently recurring in these pages, it would be as well to explain that it means a break in the navigation between two lakes or rivers, and that boats, provisions, &c. &c., have to be "portaged" or *carried* over this break. There were no less than forty-seven "portages" between Lake Shebandowan and Fort Garry, each one entailing very severe labour on the troops.

#### EN VOYAGE.

[снар.

vn.]

ranchless e, somege weird bygone ds have is small. ly borne out here of moss. best on ikes are red with is most We lost t fortureached uls into d.

ipied in ther two toppage

curring in 1 break in provisions, 1k. There 2bandowan e troops. originally arose in front, from the fact of the first detachment being unavoidably large, and from the Royal Artillery having, in addition to their provisions, two 7-pounder guns, and a quantity of ammunition and military equipment, which occupied much time in portaging. The brigades also were at first sent off rather too quickly one after the other from McNeill's Bay, so that those in front had not time to get over the portage before the next detachment arrived.

The Kashaboiwe Portage is about 1,500 yards long. When we arrived we found that a broad road had been cut through the woods, and skids or rollers haid down on which to haul over the heavy boats. This work had been done by Colonel Feilden's detachment, which led the way all through, and had the honour of pioneering the force and cutting out all the portage roads.

The labour of portaging was very severe ; everything had to be carried across on the backs of the men. For this purpose, Indians and experienced voyageurs use a long strap called a "portage strap," which consists of a broad thick band of ox-hide leather, 26 inches long and  $3\frac{1}{4}$  inches broad, tapering off at both ends to one inch in breadth. To

106

CHAP.

each of these ends is sewn a long leather strap about one inch wide and five to seven feet long, the whole forming one long strap. It is used thus. The long ends are tied firmly round the barrel or package to be carried, in such a manner as to leave at the broad part of the strap a loop large enough to allow the head to be passed through. The barrel is then hoisted on to the back, and the broad part of the strap rests against the forehead. In this way almost the whole strain bears on the backbone and vertebræ of the neck. An Indian usually clasps his hands round the back of his head to help the "leverage," and in this manner will carry an immense weight. Our men at first were rather awkward at it, and could not carry a great weight, but they got into the way of it very quickly, and before they got to Fort Garry would think nothing of a weight which at first they would have been physically unable to stagger under. Our barrels, or rather half-barrels, of pork, were the heaviest packages we had; they weighed 200 lbs. each, flour barrels 120 lbs., biscuit barrels 100 lbs. An experienced voyageur thinks nothing of a barrel I saw one fellow, a slight and by no of pork. means strong-looking man, carry two barrels of pork at the same time, and he asked for something else to

be p from A was two the v rope the The of w strai been straj acros milk be Wol struc and ador that of o heav It and worl

vir.]

EN VOYAGE.

[спар.

vп.]

er strap et long, ed thus. parrel or to leave enough e barrel ad part his way one and asps his elp the an imrather great it very would would : Our ere the 200 lbs. 00 lbs. i barrel by no of pork else to

be put on the top! He was a half-breed Indian from Fort William.

Another way of carrying the heavy pork-barrels was by means of a kind of hand-barrow made of two small poles (which are easily cut anywhere in the woods) and united by two slings made of 2-inch rope; the poles are run through the loops, and the barrel rests on the centre of the rope-slings. The men used to walk between the poles, the ends of which they held in their hands; and to ease the strain from their arms (which would otherwise have been very great), they used to fasten their portage straps to the poles, letting the broad parts rest across their shoulders, much in the same way as a milkman's wooden yoke, or as sedan-chairs used to arried in former times in England. Colonel be Wolseley had a number of these rope-slings constructed before leaving Prince Arthur's Landing, and issued to each boat. They were very generally adopted, and found to answer admirably, except that it took two men to carry a pork barrel instead of one man. However, they were only used for the heavy barrels and for the arm-chests.

It took us nearly the whole day getting our boat and stuff across this portage; we were new to the work, and the heat, being very great, rendered the

# THE RED RIVER EXPEDITION. [CHAP.

labour all the more severe. It was half-past six in the evening before we got away, but the excessive beauty of the calm summer evening more than repaid us for the heat of the day. By the aid of the chart we found the way without difficulty. Kashaboiwe Lake is about nine miles long, and studded with beautifully-wooded islands. We had got out of the burnt region; and as the light gig pulled quickly along, the calm beauty of the scene was reflected back in wondrous perfection by the mirrorlike waters of the lake. Not a sound but the measured dip of the oars broke the perfect stillness that reigned through these primeval woods, and we forebore from conversation as if fearful that a human voice would break the magic spell. Each little point and headland that we passed opened out new beauties from Nature's inexhaustible treasure-house, till the gathering shades of night warned us to look out for a place to camp on. We soon found a spot on a pretty little island, where the lodge poles of an Indian wigwam marked a favourite camping-ground of these children of the woods, and leaving the men to make a fire and cook our humble repast, D---- and I jumped into the lake and increased our appetites for supper by a refreshing swim. We had two tents, but only pitched one to take shelter in, in case of vn.)

rain. and with with aslee hap

such  $\mathbf{mill}$ A ing lead Lak forn the cha Lak spa of a can cre had we at 1

CHAP.

vп.]

ast six in excessive than reid of the Kashastudded l got out ig pulled eene was e mirrorbut the stillness , and we a human ch little out new re-house, s to look id a spot les of an g-ground the men —— and ppetites vo tents, case of

rain. We all preferred bivouacking in the open air, and after a composing pipe, wrapped in our blankets, with our feet to the fire, and the blue vault of heaven with its myriad stars for our roof, we soon fell asleep, "far from the busy hum of men," with the happy consciousness that a hard day's work

## " Had earned a night's repose :"

such a sleep as would be envied by the toiling millions of our crowded cities.

An hour's row in the freshness of the early morning brought us to the "Height of Land" Portage, leading into Lac des Mille Lacs. Between this Lake and Kashaboiwe Lake lies the high land forming the watershed between Hudson's Bay and the Gulf of St. Lawrence, Lac des Mille Lacs discharging its waters into the former, and Kashaboiwe Lake into the latter. Between these two lakes is a space of about two miles, but by taking advantage of a small lake, called "Summit Pond," the distance can be reduced considerably. Passing up a narrow creek choked with weeds, and so shallow that we had to jump out and wade and drag the boat through, we got into Summit Pond, about a half mile long, at the western end of which was the portage path.

Here we found two brigades hard at work. The

CHAP

VII

ot

ea

ev

Wa

ne

fre

66 .

m

ou

la

ge

Pe

 $\mathbf{b}\mathbf{c}$ 

ba

pı

fo

se

in

W

01

b

a

 $\mathbf{s}$ 

M

t

]

5 . N. F. S

portage was 1,900 yards long and very severe, but by dividing it into two parts both brigades were able to work at the same time, one working on the far end, the other on the near end. For this purpose a broad road ten feet wide had to be cut through the woods, and trees laid down at intervals of about three feet as skids or rollers, on which the boats were dragged over on their keels to keep them from the rocky ground. The best trees for this purpose are the American poplars which happily abound in this sterile land. Whatever trees are used should be green and have a smooth bark; after rain or heavy dew there was a perceptible difference in the labour of dragging the boats; the wet made the bark slippery and the boats would then go over as if on greased rollers. On steep ground it was necessary to keep the skids in their places by driving strong wooden pegs into the ground alongside of them. After a little experience we found that on arriving at a portage it was always best to take the boat over first, whilst we were comparatively fresh, and the provisions afterwards.

The plan we adopted, and by which we found that the greatest amount of power could be got out of our crew, was as follows: four men tied their portage straps to the tow-line, two and two, the

[CHAP

vн.]

vere, but ides were ng on the this purt through s of about oats were from the rpose are d in this hould be or heavy he labour the bark as if on necessary ig strong of them. arriving boat over and the

re found got out ed their wo, the other four tied theirs to the seats of the gig, two on each side, at the stem and stern, to keep her on an even keel; the tow-line (made of four-inch rope) was fastened to a hole made in the keel of the gig near her fore-foot, which enabled the men pulling in front to lift her nose over the skids; then, with a "yo-heave-oh," all pulled together with a will, each man doing his utmost. It was hard work even with our light gig with only eight men, but some of the large heavy boats required thirty or forty men to get them up steep places. This Height of Land Portage was very trying to the men, some of the boats having no less than twenty-three or twenty-four barrels of pork in them besides other provisions in proportion, and the labour of going backwards and forwards so constantly with heavy loads was very severe. To lighten it, Captain Wallace of the 60th improvised a rough sledge, cut out of a tree where two branches of a similar size forked out; on this sledge eight or ten barrels could be put at a time and dragged over the rollers, but after a while it was given up, for the weight of the sledge itself, which was necessarily made of green wood, added much to the labour, and it was requisite to have a man on each side of the sledge with a lever to lift the nose of the sledge over the rollers.

# 112 THE RED RIVER EXPEDITION. [CHAP.

Subsequently a few of the light carts belonging to the Transport Service were brought on to these first two portages and were of the greatest assistance, but they did not arrive until after the regulars had passed on. Some of the brigades were two and three days getting over this portage, working from morning to night, and the excessive severity of the labour began to tell upon the men.



CROSSING A PORTAGE.

The way in which all ranks worked, officers and men alike, was beyond all praise. The officers vied with their men in carrying heavy loads, and apart from the respect with which the officers were treated a stranger could not have told an officer from a private. Their dress was much the same : sleeves rolled up to the elbows; arms, neck, and hands as brothr inte nig to fora pat wor fron the har five brea and lool the mai 1  $\operatorname{troc}$ of sug pot has mea mei WOI

VH.]

[СИАР.

vii.]

nging to hese first ssistance, lars had two and ing from y of the



ers and ers vied d apart treated from a sleeves ands as

brown as berries; loose flannel shirts open at the throat, a pair of very dirty duck trowsers tucked into mocassins, and a straw hat or red woollen night-cap to crown all; little remnants of uniform to be seen anywhere, except occasionally an odd forage cap or two. The men had in most cases patched the seats of their trowsers, which soon got worn out by continual rowing, with pieces of canvas from empty biscuit bags or flour bags, and presented thereby a most comical appearance. Up early, hard at work all day, rowing or portaging, from five A.M. to eight P.M. with a short interval for breakfast and dinner, nothing to eat but salt pork and biscuit, nothing to drink but tea, they yet looked as healthy and cheery as possible; and when they reached Fort Frances, there was not a sick man amongst them-they had no time to be sick.

The scale of daily rations laid down for the troops, officers and men alike, was as follows: 1 lb. of biscuit, 1 lb. of salt pork, 1 oz. of tea, 2 ozs. of sugar,  $\frac{1}{3}$  pint of beans, or  $\frac{1}{4}$  lb. pound of preserved potatoes, and on these the men did as hard work as has ever been done by the men of any army. The meat ration was undoubtedly rather meagre for men doing such hard work, and  $1\frac{1}{2}$  lbs. per day would not have been too much. But as the troops

VII.

su

the

an

fin

tio

the

wl

me

th

an

a

ma

an

dr

wl

ລນ

po

m

ke

be

ta

ad

is

ne

tl

sa

had to pass through a dreary wilderness of rocks, trees, and water, where no supplies of any description (except a few fish) could be procured, and as every ounce of food had to be carried on their own backs, an addition to the meat ration would have caused a very considerable addition to the weight to be carried over the portages, and therefore a delay to the expedition. The men were constantly wet sometimes for days together,through, wet thoroughly done up by the severe labour of rowing, poling, tracking, and portaging; yet they were always well and cheery, and never seemed to feel the absence of spirituous liquors. This fact speaks for itself. I trust that the time has come when the issue of a spirit ration to a British army in the field will be for ever totally abolished. The men do not want it-they are better without itbetter in every way. Throughout the Red River Expedition the absence of spirituous liquors was marked by an almost total absence of crime, as well as by the wonderful good health and spirits of the men. I do not hesitate to say that, had a spirit ration been issued, the results would have been very different. Take the case of trappers and lumberers in Canada, men who do harder work than any other class of men in the world; they live on bread, pork,

[снар,

VII.]

s of rocks. lescription d as every wn backs, ve caused ght to be i delay to intly wet ogether,abour of yet they seemed to This fact has come tish army ied. The hout it-Red River uors was e, as well spirits of d a spirit been very umberers any other ead, pork,

sugar and tea. If any one doubts the severity of the work they perform, let him take an axe and go and chop down trees for ten minutes, and he will find that even in the coldest weather the perspiration will pour from him. Lumberers will tell you themselves, that they had rather not have whiskey when they are chopping in the woods, and these men are no tectotallers ; as soon as they get back to their homes, they get drunk on whiskey. I know of an instance in the Crimea where a fine young fellow, a promising young sergeant, was tried by courtmartial and broken for being drunk in the trenches, and it was proved at the court-martial that he had drunk nothing but the double allowance of spirits which was at that time issued to our men. Can anything be stronger evidence than this of the positive evil of the spirit ration? How many men too in the Crimea were tried for getting at the keg of liquor in the trenches, which always had to be kept under a sentry, and was a constant temptation to the men and to the sentry himself? I admit that, in a country where fuel is scarce, it is difficult always to get wood to make the fire necessary for tea; but this should be provided by the Commissariat, and the money and transport saved by the absence of liquor would go a long

CHAP.

VI

lid

tu

da

it

po

of

us

do

a

 $^{\mathrm{sh}}$ 

on

wl

th

ro

a

nc

de

ca

cr

aľ

it

W

bo

w

110

way towards supplying the fuel requisite for the There is nothing that is so refreshing when tea. a man is thoroughly wet and tired as a good warm cup of tea or coffee: it is fifty times as good as brandy, rum, or whiskey. The latter only warm you up for a time and leave you colder than ever, but the effect of tea or coffee lasts much longer and leaves no vacuum behind it. There may be medical men in our army who would oppose the non-issue of spirits; it was so with the Red River Expedition : some of the medical men asserted that it was a mistake, that it would never do-but the result was a most perfect triumph for tea; and should the same system ever be tried, as I hope and trust it will in the next European war in which England has to engage, I feel confident that the result would Not a man of the Red River Force be the same. touched a drop of alcoholic or fermented liquor the whole way from Shebandowan to Fort Garry, except he was ill and received it from the store of medical comforts, and there was positively no sickness and a total absence of crime, combined with the utmost cheerfulness and good humour, while the work performed stands wholly unrivalled for its unusual nature as well as its severity.

The men soon get reconciled to the absence of

CHAP.

vii.]

e for the ng when ood warm good as ly warm han ever. nger and e medical non-issue Expedit it was a esult was ould the l trust it England ilt would er Force quor the y, except medical ness and e utmost ork perunusual

sence of

EN VOYAGE.

liquor, and appreciate the value of tea as a substitute, as the following anecdote will show. One day we were hauling our boat over a portage; it was the middle of the day and very hot, the portage was steep, and it was hard work. Some of the Colonel's crew of Iroquois came up to help us, to my great delight, for we were pretty well done, when a sudden jolt of the boat splashed up a little tea out of a big can that was in the sternsheets. "Let's stop and have a drink," said some No sooner said than done. The big can, one. which held a couple of gallons, was soon emptied, though the tea was quite hot. The men crowded round, fearful lest they should be too late to get a drop; had it been beer or whiskey, they could not have shown a greater anxiety or gulped it down with more satisfaction. "By Jove! that's capital, puts new life into one," said one of my crew, a 60th man. "Yes," I replied, "better than all the beer in the world." "Well, sir, I really think it is," was his answer-and so it was. In hot weather cold tea is a most refreshing and stimulating beverage; and in cold or wet weather, who has a word to say against a delightful cup of warm tea ?

But to return from this digression. We were nearly the whole of this day, the 23rd, getting

СНАР.

VH.

across this long portage, and it was late in the evening before the gig was loaded and ready to start again. The route here leads nearly due north to about the centre of Lae des Mille Laes, and then turns westward along the old canoe route. We had great difficulty in finding the way, and at last camped for the night on a little island full of wild roses and mosquitoes, utterly uncertain of our whereabouts. Lac des Mille Lacs is a large sheet of water about thirty miles long and six to ten broad, and should rather be called Lac des Mille Iles, so studded is its surface with islands. These islands are of a peculiar nature. What looks to be one enormous island at a little distance resolves itself on a nearer approach to an infinity of small ones, which, separated only by narrow channels, overlap and fit into one another like the pieces of a Chinese puzzle, so that the traveller may wander on from one little lake to another, for miles. Hence the name given to it by the Canadian voyageurs. Even the guides frequently lose themselves for a time, and the only safe way is to steer a course by compass, which our maps were sufficiently accurate to enable us to do. The scenery is wonderfully pretty, but the shores are quite unfit for settlement, as there is but little

sur roc are the gne stra qua the at the as any be brighted bbea ing day to : Dne  $\mathbf{po}$ ab po:  $\mathbf{m}\mathbf{i}$ ma

[снар.

vn.]

e in the ready to arly due lle Lacs, d canoe the way, le island incertain s a large d six to Lac des islands. hat looks tance reinfinity narrow like the traveller another, by the equently safe way ir maps 0. The pres are it little

surface soil or moss spreading over the underlying rock. In some parts granitic dome-shaped rocks are numerous, and towards the western end, where the lake narrows on approaching Baril Portage, gneissoid hills and islands show a well-defined stratification dipping north. Exposures of white quartz called "Sail Rocks," from the resemblance they bear to the sails of distant boats, are frequent at the western extremity of the lake. Here and there the hills bear pine of fair dimensions, but as a rule the timber is very poor, and searcely anything worth cutting for lumber purposes was to be seen anywhere along our route. Almost all the brigades lost their way for a few hours on this most beautiful but perplexing lake; but the canoe containing the Globe correspondent wandered about for two days amongst the islands, and eventually returned to the Height of Land Portage to wait for a guide.

Frightfully bullied all night by the mosquitoes, D----- and I were glad enough to get up early next morning and resume our search for the portage, which we at length hit off, arriving there about eleven o'clock. The distance from the last portage to Baril Portage is estimated at twenty miles, but we must have toiled over many miles more. Baril Portage is about 350 yards long, with

CHAP.

VII

at "

fiv

al

th

a

In

to

fis

ne

nd

ar

ae

fo

be

a high hill in the centre, like a hog's back or a barrel; hence the name. We found D and E brigades of the 60th on this portage, and by the kind help of some of the men we got our boat up the steep hill and safely launched on the other side in Baril Lake. The day was fine and warm, not too hot, the heat being tempered with a pleasant breeze from the west, against which we beat up Baril Lake, a long narrow sheet of water about eight and a half miles in length. Spying a little headland jutting out from the north shore with a charming little bay on each side, we camped there for the night, and had here one of the jolliest little camps of many very jolly ones; we stopped rather earlier than usual, in order to set our net across a tempting little bay, for we were getting tired of our salt diet and longed for some fresh fish to supplement the salt pork. D—— and I made our beds on a spring mattress of Nature's own designing, two or three feet deep of the most beautiful moss, on which we slept the sleep of the just till 3.30 A.M. next morning, when awaking with the first flush of daylight we took a plunge in the lake whilst the meu made a fire and boiled water for tea. We kept early hours, truly, regulating ourselves pretty much by the sun. As v.e

wa is of pa w of by or cl

aı

[CHAP.

vn.]

ack or a and E d by the · boat up ther side arm, not pleasant beat up er about g a little re with a bed there iest little ed rather across a tired of fish to I made o's own he most b of the awaking plunge d boiled y, regu-As we

ate our biscuit and drank a warm cup of the liquid "that cheers but not inebriates," we saw four or five canoe-loads of Indians paddling down the lake about 500 yards from us. They must have seen the smoke of our camp-fire, but did not pay us a visit, at which we rejoiced greatly, for these Indians are sad mendicants, and we had no food to spare, to give them. The result of our night's fishing was disappointing; there was no fear of the net breaking from the "multitude of fishes," for not a solitary one did we capture.

A half-hour's row brought us to Brulé Portage, and by 8.45 A.M. we had got our boat and stuff across, cooked and eaten breakfast, and were ready for a fresh start. The heavy dew of the night before had made the skids slippery, and the gig was hauled over with little trouble. Brulé Portage is 500 yards long; the path winds round the foot of a steep hill 200 feet high, and is not unlike a path through an English wood. The vegetation was very luxuriant, though young; the remains of the dead trunks of half-burnt trees, lying hidden by a profuse growth of brushwood, indicated the origin of the name. The second growth consisted chiefly of black cherry, birch, white and black alder, and a thick undergrowth of hazel-nut.

# 122 THE RED RIVER EXPEDITION. [CHAP.

Embarking again at the foot of the portage path, forty-seven feet below Baril Lake, we descended a winding rushy stream opening out into a continuation of lovely lakes and lakelets, connected together by rapid streams and dull quiet creeks, fringed with cedar and spruce, and covered with thick beds of the beautiful white lily and its golden-hued companion. The scenery was very beautiful, though somewhat monotonous. This part of the route is called by the Indians "Lake Windegoostigon," which I believe means, a series of lakes.

fr

T

đ

e

g

tl

W

p

it

 $\mathbf{p}^{\mathbf{i}}$ 

pi

eı

si

tl

р

tl

u

tl

V

р

t

t

F

a

Coming at last to a shallow rapid stream, we had to get out and walk through the woods, whilst the two voyageurs took the boat down : we followed it for about three miles and then came to some pretty falls, round which was the new portage path, 400 yards long. Here we found Colonel Feilden and the three leading brigades. They were occupied, when we arrived, in cutting out the road and laying down skids, an operation quickly performed by the voyageurs. The old portage, which we had avoided by coming down this stream, is two miles long and a truly dreadful portage. It is nothing but a continued series of climbing up and down steep and rocky hills, and the labour of portaging everything over it would have been dreadful to

[снар.

tage path, seended a continual together aged with a beds of ued coml, though route is postigon,"

a, we had whilst the llowed it ne pretty oath, 400 den and becupied, oad and erformed a we had we had wo miles nothing ad down ortaging adful to contemplate. It would have taken each brigade from three to four days of the most severe labour. The new portage path descends a very steep hill, down which the stream finds its way, a little to the east of the path in a series of very pretty cascades.

Having caught up with the leading brigades, the gig was now able to take it easily. Next morning, the 26th, we embarked again on the same stream, which now became deep and sluggish, too deep to pole and too narrow for rowing, but very pretty; its banks fringed with alder, tamarack, and pitchpine, and occasional larger trees of white and red pine. As we dropped lazily down with the current, enjoying the luxury of a morning pipe, an occasional young partridge would flutter away through the bushes, scared at our approach; numerous pigeons flitted about, and looked down at us from the lofty pines with wondering eyes, evidently unused to the "human face divine." They presented the most tempting shots, and made our mouths water with delicious but tantalizing visions of pigeon-pie, but alas! there was no shot-gun in the gig; so we had to amuse ourselves by scaring them from their perches by a loud shout, and then presenting imaginary guns at them as they flew away. This stream has so many sharp turns and

vn.]

twists that although in a straight line it is only two miles from point to point, yet following the windings the distance must be fully ten or eleven miles. To give an idea of the way in which it wriggles and bends about, an officer told me that about ten minutes after leaving the portage, when he thought he had gone at least half a mile, he missed his purse, which he recollected having left on the ground near his tent. Just at that moment he heard a voice hailing them, and found that it came from a man belonging to a brigade at work on the portage, who had wandered away a little from the path. He sent the man back for the purse, which was found on the spot indicated, not more than 200 yards off !

This stream connects Lake Windegoostigon with French Lake, a pretty circular basin  $1\frac{1}{2}$  miles in diameter, surrounded by low hills timbered with an extensive forest of red pine. The temperature on this western side of the watershed is much milder than to the eastward of it, the level of the country sinking steadily as we proceed, French Lake being 150 feet below Lac des Mille Lacs. On the shores of this lake a humming-bird was seen for the first time.

Going on through two smaller lakes, connected by

CHAP.

VI

a

01

 $\mathbf{sl}$ 

bı

de

fi

m

aı

of

L

R

ro

se

do

st

(t

b

n

 $\mathbf{h}$ 

a

a

a

a

ι

t

## [CHAP.

vн.]

## EN VOYAGE.

it is only owing the or eleven which it l me that age, when a mile, he aving left at moment d that it e at work y a little k for the cated, not

igon with miles in red with aperature is much el of the French lle Lacs. pird was

ected by

a very pretty river about 11 miles long, we came out into Lake Kaogassikok, or Pickerel Lake, a fine sheet of water thirteen miles long by two to four broad, at the western extremity of which is Portage The timber on this portage was the des Pins. finest we had yet seen, many really splendid specimens of white and red pine crowning the portage, and looking proudly down upon a young growth of the sugar-maple. A row of a mile across Doré Lake brought us to the next portage, called Deux Rivières, 750 yards long, and very steep and rocky. On first walking across this portage, it seemed as if it would be almost impossible to lay down rollers for the boats up and down such steep hills, but old Ignace and his crew of Iroquois (ten men), assisted by the voyageurs of the three brigades, made a capital road by five o'elock the next evening. At one spot they cut down two huge red pines, large enough to be the spars of a big ship, and, laying them lengthwise, put skids across on notches cut in the pines, and thus made a capital bridge across a ravine, lessening the ascent very much.

This afternoon, the 28th, Colonel Wolseley came up in his canoe, accompanied by Mr. Irvine, and the gig thenceforth joined the Head-Quarter camp.

CHAP.

VI

of

W

co

to

sľ

ar

a

 $\mathbf{pl}$ 

01

th

W

m

pa

a

ar

W

 $^{\mathrm{th}}$ 

of

w

CE

tl

ai

li

h

ir

As Colonel Wolseley had passed the different brigades one after the other, he found that they had had considerable trouble at many places in finding the right road, the numerous deep bays which in many of these lakes branch off in every direction rendering it very difficult to avoid losing the right track. It is most disheartening for the men to find, when they get to the end of one of these bays, that they have come eight or ten miles out of the way and have all that distance to row back again. Consequently, when there is the slightest doubt about the route no one cares to push on quickly, when doing so may be leading them a long distance astray. Colone Wolseley, therefore, with the canoe and gig from this point up to Fort Frances, kept well ahead of the leading detachment, and "blazed" trees at every turn of the track or doubtful point.

For the benefit of the uninitiated, I may mention that "blazing" a tree is scoring it with an axe, so that the white inner wood makes a plain and distinct mark. An Indian, as he walks through a wood, will "blaze" a tree here and there on either side of his path, generally ten to twenty yards apart, with one stroke of his axe, so dexterously, as not to shorten the pace

[снар.

vn.]

different that they places in leep bays in every oid losing ig for the of one of t or ten ; distance hen there no one o may be Colonel gig from ell ahead d" trees point. nay menit with makes a he walks tere and ally ten of his he pace

of his long springy stride. But our "blazes" were very different; we used to select a group of conspicuous trees at a point where the route turned to the right or left, and a couple of men would spring ashore with axes, lop off the lower branches, and strip the bark off for several feet, thus making a mark visible for a mile or more. After this plan had been adopted, the brigades in rear got on much better.

From Deux Rivières Portage, the route leads through a narrow winding channel, overgrown with rushes and lilies, into Sturgeon Lake, the most beautiful of the many beautiful lakes yet passed. The sudden contraction of the lake into a river breadth for a few yards amongst islands, and its abrupt opening out into wide expanses of water, with deep and gloomy bays stretching into the dark forest as far as the eye could reach, offered a picture of ever-changing beauty. Halfway up this lake we met a large North-West canoe, manned by Iroquois Indians, and found that it contained Mr. Simpson, M.P. for Algoma, and Mr. Pither. The latter gentleman had been living at Fort Frances for some months past, having been sent by the Ottawa Government to inform the Indians of the intention of Government

CHAP.

g

cl

cc

a

to

fa

aj

re

sta

 $^{\mathrm{ch}}$ 

or

no

m

it

of

sil

 $^{\mathrm{th}}$ 

op

ed

 $\operatorname{tr}$ 

fal

be

to send troops through their country, and to arrange with them for right of way. He had reached Fort Frances in the month of March, after a long and toilsome journey on snow-shoes across the lakes. Mr. Simpson had been scnt up subsequently to conclude a treaty with them, Mr. Pither having paved the way. Both gentlemen turned back and accompanied us to Fort Frances, after some little difficulty with their crew, who did not like to see the head of their canoe turned westward again.

Sturgeon Lake empties itself into Lac la Croix, through Sturgeon River, about 18 miles long, with numerous falls and heavy rapids, about which we had heard such gloomy accounts in Ottawa from those who professed to know the route. These rapids are four in number, and close together. The boats were taken down by the Iroquois without injury, the only one damaged being one that was allowed to be taken down by the regular Canadian voyageurs. The celebrated guide Ignace and his crew were invaluable at this work, and Colonel Wolseley left them at the rapids to take the boats of the succeeding brigades down too. Portage de l'Isle, the last of several portages on Sturgeon River, is a very pretty portage

CHAP.

vn.]

o arrange l reached fter a long cross the sequently r. Pither en turned aces, after to did not ned west-

e la Croix, iles long, ils, about counts in know the and close n by the damaged down by elebrated luable at m at the brigades reral porportage on an island, as its name implies. The river divides into two channels and falls over a ledge of rock in the most picturesque cascades.

Having now two crews of Indians besides the gig, we tried to help on the leading detachment by cutting out the portage roads for them,-a proceeding which, with such experienced axe-men, took a wonderfully short time. It is perfectly astonishing to see the way in which trees of large dimensions fall before the axe of the backwoodsman; they appear to be swept away like corn before the reaper; anything under 18 inches in diameter stands but a very few blows from the heavy chopping-axe. In cutting down a tree, an Indian or backwoodsman follows a regular system, and does not go hacking at it all round as an inexperienced man does; he makes a clean wedge-shaped cut into it on the side on which he wishes it to fall, the end of the wedge being as near a right angle as possible. When he has thus cut about half-way through the tree, a small nick cut on exactly the opposite side causes it to fall in a line with the edge of the wedge-shaped cut. In this way, any tree that is vertical, or nearly so, can be made to fall in any required direction, unless there should be a strong wind blowing, when it is difficult to

[CHAP.

make it fall against the wind. One of our party seemed to have a most extraordinary faith in the skill of an Indian, and his power of making a tree fall in any direction, and caused much amusement and chaff by his arguments in support of his theory. He was at last confronted with a tree that was leaning at an angle of about 60° with the ground, and told to make that fall the contrary way. He requested one of the Indians to do so, but the man shook his head and laughed, and our friend had to give up his pet theory; and I think his faith in the powers of an Indian was much shaken from I remember, however, one case in which that day. an Indian showed great dexterity in cutting down It was at the camp on the Matawan River. a tree. A tall and branchless pine was leaning over Colonel Wolseley's tent in a very dangerous way, threatening to fall and crush the occupant on the first heavy breeze of wind. An Indian was summoned to cut it down, and after great care and judgment, he made the tree fall between the tent and the messtable with great nicety; a couple of feet one way or the other, and it would have fallen on the tent or on the table. He cut his wedge with mathematical accuracy, and just as the tree cracked and bent to its fall a couple of swiftly-dealt blows

m  $\mathbf{br}$ sh ari cre of the " N the Ma wa the and twi riv We enč Lo Na aga rap (

> aer chi]

VI

W

\_\_\_\_\_

[CHAP.

vn.]

our party th in the ing a tree musement is theory. that was e ground, way. He t the man riend had s faith in ken from e in which ting down van River. er Colonel nreatening rst heavy ned to cut rment, he the messfeet one fallen on edge with e cracked alt blows with the back of the axe on one side of the trunk made it fall just clear of the table.

From Portage de l'Isle a few miles further brought us to Lac la Croix, a long and broad sheet of water, so named by some Jesuit missionaries many years ago, who erected two large wooden crosses on conspicuous islands at the western end of the lake. The crosses have disappeared, but the lake retains the name. The Indians call it "Nequaquon." The old canoe route turns off at the north-western end and follows the Rivière Maligne into Lake Namekan, but this route was pronounced very dangerous for the big boats, the river being full of rapids and sunken rocks and long portages. Mr. Donald Smith's canoe was twice broken during his recent descent of this river, although manned by the best Iroquois. We therefore followed the lake to its western end, and then turned south for a few miles into Loon Lake, and made a bend round, coming into Namekan Lake and joining the old canoe route again. By this detour we avoided the dangerous rapids of the Rivière Maligne.

On one of the portages on Loon Lake we came across some Indians, three old women and some children. One of the old women was the most

131

D

CHAP.

S

р

m

w

h

W

m

m

 $\mathbf{it}$ 

tc

ni

4

st

m

 $\mathbf{sl}$ 

d

hideous old hag that it is possible to imagine, skinny, wrinkled, withered, bent, clothed in rags and tatters, and very old. Mr. Pither informed us that she was a cannibal; that is to say, she had been one of a party some winters previously who had been starved into eating human flesh. We gave these poor creatures a little flour and biscuit, which made them quite happy and contented, and the old hag went up and begged from the men the water in which their pork had One of our party that morning was been boiled. a lady (the only one that accompanied the expedition), who had bravely followed her husband and shared his canoe through all the perils and fatigues of the journey. The old hag seemed lost in wonder at the sight of this lady, and truly the contrast between the two was so wonderful, that it was hard to believe that they could be beings of the same nature, hard to realize that the difference between them was only owing to the human agency of education and civilization. The old hag was such a horrid object to look at that we were glad to make our escape from her.

Crossing Lake Namekan, we came to Portage Nu, the last before Fort Frances. This really consists of two portages, with a narrow sluggish

[силр.

v11.]

#### EN VOYAGE.

imagine, d in rags informed s to say, inters preng human little flour appy and ad begged pork had orning was the expeisband and nd fatigues in wonder e contrast at it was ngs of the difference he human The old it that we

o Portage his really v sluggish stream between. We had just finished cutting out the path and laying the skids when Colonel Feilden's detachment came up. It was quite a sight to see them arrive at a portage, to see the men spring out, unload the boats, and haul them over, the crews vying with each other as to who should get everything over first. No delay or hesitation: as soon as a barrel was landed from the boat, somebody seized it, tied his portage strap round it, and off to the other end of the portage, running back to get another load. The men by this time were thoroughly up to the work, and thought nothing of a portage under half a mile in length. Bare Portage was found worthy of its name,-bare and swampy, full of mosquitoes and black flies which annoyed us much: the stream, too, was so full of leeches that it was impossible to bathe in it. We were glad to get away from it after a not very pleasant night, delighted to think we had a fair stretch of 46 miles of open water without a portage.

At the entrance into Rainy Lake we met a strong north-westerly gale, against which we could make no headway, and were obliged to take shelter on an island, where we were detained all day by the violence of the wind. Some of us

CHAP.

n k

v

v d

a b

0

t

I

t

a e

were not sorry at this detention, for the island was covered with a wonderful profusion of the largest and finest blue-berries, as large as cherries, as delicious as grapes, and with a bloom like a peach, and no stones inside. We ate them until we could not stand, and then we lay down and ate them again, and fell asleep to wake up and attack them again! We filled every spare vessel we had with gallons of blue-berries; we had blue-berry jam, blue-berry bread, and blue-berries in every conceivable shape possible to our limited culinary skill and appliances. The Indians live on blue-berries in the summer, but until we came across this island, I had no idea what a blue-berry could be, and was formerly rather inclined to look contemptuously on them.

Amongst the vegetable products of this region is a plant called Poisoned Ivy or Ground Ivy. The leaf is shaped like the hazel-leaf, but not quite so deep in colour, and is smoother on the surface and along the edge. The plant is perennial, about a foot high, and bears a pale yellowish flower in the early spring : the leaves grow in triplets, and are broad and long. If the leaf is plucked and rubbed against the face or hands, or if a man run over it with bare feet and crush it,

[CHAP.

v11.]

he island n of the s cherries, m like a hem until lown and e up and are vessel we had lue-berries ur limited lians live we came plue-berry d to look

region is ivy. The quite so e surface perennial, yellowish grow in e leaf is hands, or crush it, the poison makes the part touched swell like erysipelas; a cluster of little pimples appear which turn into blisters, and the discharge from which will communicate the poison to other parts of the body. The attack lasts nine days, although it frequently leaves symptoms about the body for months afterwards. The irritation and pain are Both Mr. Simpson and Mr. Pither excessive. had suffered dreadfully from its effects, and stated that during the attack they could only find relief by sitting in cool water for hours together. It is not known to all the Iroquois, though the Ojibeways know it well. Mr. Pither told us of an Indian who, being sceptical as to its effects, rubbed his face with it. Two days afterwards his face and head were so swollen that his features were scarcely distinguishable. He could not see out of his eyes, and was in great pain. Some people are said to be able to handle it with impunity, and this is the only way by which one can account for the fact that it abounds all over the country, and that Indians camp frequently in the midst of it, when their children would necessarily touch it constantly.

Next day the same head winds delayed us, and we could only make progress in the very early morning and late in the evening. Rainy

## THE RED RIVER EXPEDITION. [CHAP. VII.

Lake is an enormous sheet of water, the largest we had yet passed through, being about 50 miles long by 30 to 40 broad. Its shores present a sterile and hopeless aspect; the timber is very poor, and bleached and naked rocks are visible for miles together. It is about 420 feet above the level of Lake Superior, and is 225 miles west of that lake. Its waters are clear but warm, and not very deep, and flow into Lake of the Woods by a magnificent river, 80 miles long, called Rainy River, which issues from its western extremity. The canoe route takes a nearly west course through about 38 miles of the lake.

On the morning of the 4th August, after two days' detention by contrary winds, we were under way again at 4.15 A.M., and soon got to the end of the lake and commenced to descend Rainy River. The aspect of the country here changes entirely, as if by magic; the banks of the river are low and alluvial, and covered with a dense second growth, and the land has all the appearance of great fertility. A rapid run of three miles down the river brought us to the long-expected half-way house, Fort Frances; and glad indeed were we to see signs of the abode of man after the desolate and inhospitable region we had passed through.

[CHAP. VII.

the largest 50 miles present a very poor, for miles e level of of that l not very ods by a ed Rainy extremity. st course

after two ere under the end of ny River. entirely, e low and l growth, of great down the half-way ere we to e desolate bugh.

# CHAPTER VIII.

## FORT FRANCES.

FORT FRANCES, one of the Hudson's Bay Company's posts, is situated on the right bank of Rainy River, about three miles below the lake, in lat. 48° 35' N., long. 93° 40' W. It consists of a collection of wooden one-storied block-houses, surrounded by a palisading, and is built on a position of some natural strength and of great beauty. Just opposite to it are the falls, round which is the portage. These falls are very lovely. The whole body of water of Rainy River, some 300 yards wide, tumbles over a ledge of rock about 22 feet in height, in a volume of spray and mist, with a roar audible for many miles. Below, the river glides tranquilly along between high wooded banks, in a straight stretch of a mile and a half. The view from the fort is very charming, combining all

the essentials of picturesque beauty except that of mountain scenery. There has been at one time a good deal of cleared land round the post, but much of it has been allowed to return to its primitive wildness, and is becoming covered with a scrubby, second growth. There is capital pastureland, the grass being green and luxuriant, as fine as is to be seen in any part of Canada. To our eyes, wearied with the monotopous sameness of the barren and inhospitable region we had lately passed through, this green and fertile oasis in the midst of the desert of rock, forest, and water, was like a glimpse of the Promised Land.

Mr. McKenzie, the Hudson's Bay Company's official in charge of the post, was most civil and obliging, giving up a room in his house for the use of Colonel Wolseley and the Head-quarter staff, and allowing us to have the run of our teeth in his garden, so that during our stay of five days we revelled in green peas, young potatoes, and cabbages, most agreeable antidotes to the scorbutic tendencies of salt pork. The luxury, too, of having a chair to sit on, and a table to write at, is not to be despised. Mr. McKenzie had a few acres of wheat, barley, and Indian corn, all of which looked remarkably well; the wheat was ready for the

138

[CHAP.

#### FORT FRANCES.

[CHAP.

vIII.]

ot that of ne time a post, but its primid with a l pasturent, as fine . To our ess of the ely passed the midst was like

Company's civil and or the use staff, and th in his days we cabbages, utic tenhaving a not to be of wheat, n looked for the siekle, and the grain fine and full. Wheat is sown here about the last week in April, and takes about ninety days to come to maturity. Potatoes, sown about the 8th of May, were fit for the table when we arrived. There were no pigs, sheep, or fowls, but about twenty head of cattle, three of which we bought for the use of the troops, so that the men as they passed through got a meal of fresh meat. The winter lasts nearly seven months, so that cattle require a vast quantity of hay during the long, weary winter months. Snow falls to a depth of about four feet, and indeed in most respects the climate of this section of the country is very similar to that of Lower Canada.

All along the banks of Rainy River is a strip of alluvial soil, which on the right or British bank extends inland for a width of from half a mile to ten miles, where it is bounded by a vast swamp joining the shores of Rainy Lake to those of Lake of the Woods. This swamp was described by Mr. Pither as consisting of a springy, moveable surface, overlying a deposit of peat, through which a pole might be pushed to a depth of thirty feet without reaching the bottom. It is covered with a growth of scrubby bush, interspersed with islands of small pine, and follows the windings of the river. At

the back of Fort Frances, the fertile wooded belt is only half a mile wide.

CHAP,

Rainy River forms the boundary line between British and American territory.

When we arrived at the fort on the morning of the 4th of August, Mr. McKenzie sent down a eart, which he had constructed expressly for the use of the expedition, to help the men over the portage round the falls. This eart was of such a peculiar nature that it deserves a special description. It was made of wood throughout, not a nail or piece of any metal whatever being employed in its construction. The wheels, about 18 inches in diameter, were composed of solid blocks of wood nearly a foot thick, and rounded with an axe. The axle-tree was literally a large "tree" fitted into the wheels; and the body of the vehicle, which searcely stood more than twelve inches from the ground, was similarly made, and was only large enough to hold a very small amount of stuff. The "thing" was drawn by an ox, harnessed between a pair of enormous shafts, with a saddle, collar, and traces like a horse. This primitive vehicle caused much amusement to the men, who dubbed it "Our Transport Service," though I believe it was a source of considerable pride to its maker. Γ

#### FORT FRANCES.

[СПАР.

vm.]

oded belt

between

orning of down a y for the over the of such a l descripnot a nail ployed in inches in of wood an axe. itted into le, which from the nly large ıff. The between le, collar, e vehicle o dubbed ve it was aker. Ι regret to say that it very soon came to pieces, the fastenings being only of buffalo hide or wood.

At the entrance to Rainy River we met Lieu-. tenant Butler, of the 69th Regiment, who had just arrived that morning from Fort Garry. He had been sent from Canada by the Lieutenant-General as an intelligence officer, and had visited Duluth, Marquette, and other town, on the south shore of Lake Superior, to see if there were any chance of the threatened Fenian raid on our communications actually taking place. Those towns were known to be full of a large Irish clement, who had openly declared their intention to obstruct the progress of the expedition in every possible way. From thence Lieutenant Butler had gone to St. Paul's in Minnesota, and then boldly made his way straight to Fort Garry, where his arrival caused much excitement amongst the rebel authorities. His life was not considered safe in the settlement, so after receiving a visit from "President" Riel, in which, I believe, the advisability of an early departure was pretty plainly hinted to him, he procured a boat by the aid of some of the loyal people, and made his way up the Winnipeg River to meet Colonel Wolseley. He brought news from Red River to the 24th July, and described the condition of affairs there as full

142

of anarchy and confusion, the French and English settlers mutually afraid of one another, and both parties in dread of an Indian outbreak, and Riel very anxious about an amnesty. They knew nothing in Red River of the whereabouts of the expedition, which Riel declared would never reach Fort Garry. Most people seemed to think that, if no amnesty were forthcoming, Riel would show fight and oppose the entrance of the troops. Mr. Butler brought some good boatmen with him, who were afterwards very useful as guides and steersmen for the Winnipeg River.

The tribe of Indians who inhabit the wild region extending from Lake Superior to the banks of the Red River and Lake Winnipeg is the Ojibeway or Chippewa. They are divided into several branches, but all speak the same language, the poetic tongue of "Hiawatha." They are wood Indians, and differ materially from the Indians of the plains, the Sioux and Crees, with whom they have a long-standing feud. Though not so warlike a race as the plain Indians, they yet occasionally go out to fight their enemies the Sioux, and have old traditions of enmity against the Iroquois. The latter speak a language totally distinct from the Chippewas, not a mere difference of dialect, but a

CHAP.

ŀ

2

I

r

f

#### FORT FRANCES.

[CHAP.

vni.]

l English and both and Riel ey knew ts of the ever reach k that, if uld show ops. Mr. him, who ad steers-

ild region ks of the Ojibeway several age, the re wood ndians of om they o warlike asionally und have pis. The from the ct, but a language as unlike the Chippewa as English is unlike French. They have no settled abodes, frequenting chiefly the alluvial valleys of the large rivers, such as the Kaministiquia and Rainy rivers, and are to be found roving in their little canoes all over the lakes and streams of the country.

Large numbers of them frequent the vicinity of Fort Frances for the sake of the sturgeon fishing in Rainy River, and assemble annually to the number of 500 or 600 to hold their great medicine ceremonies. When Mr. Simpson arrived at Fort Frances to make a treaty with them for right of way, they held a meeting to discuss the advisability of opposing the passage of the troops, but gave up the idea on being assured that it was quite impossible to do so. Although I do not think it possible that they could ever combine in any large numbers for such a purpose, yet there is no doubt that a hundred determined men might have inflicted tremendous loss on the troops with comparative impunity; for, thoroughly acquainted with the vast network of lakes, they could have fired on the boats as they passed through narrow channels, or blocked up the portages, and done much mischief in a variety of ways, while to have attempted to pursue them through the woods and lakes would

have been madness. They go about in the neatest possible little birch-bark canoes, just large enough to hold three men, and so light as to be portaged by one man with ease for long distances. The men are fine, tall fellows, with broad, heavy features displeasing to our European eyes, though some of them are good-looking enough: they wear their hair confined round the forehead by a ribbon, but plaited behind into two long tails hanging down their backs; and with the exception of a breech-cloth round the waist, their only garment is a blanket, which they wear wrapped round them like a Roman toga.

When we arrived at Fort Frances, we found only about half-a-dozen lodges, though great numbers had been there a month before. They waited a long time for us to come, expecting presents of flour, pork, and tobacco, but hope deferred had made their stomachs sick, and hunger had driven them off to their usual fishing avocations. Their principal chief, Crooked Neck (a hideous old fellow, so called from his head being all on one side), was still there, and honoured us with a visit.

It was a novel and interesting scene; about a dozen of them, clad in various-coloured blankets, stalked into the room and shook hands with us all

[CHAP.

e

fi

u

a

a

tł

G

us

 $^{\mathrm{th}}$ 

m

W

of

an

Wa

 $^{\rm th}$ 

ree

an

ha

W

lat

 $\mathbf{Fr}$ 

we

rid

hai

pre

# [CHAP.

viii.]

### FORT FRANCES.

e neatest e enough portaged The men features some of ear their a ribbon, hanging ion of a arment is and them

ound only numbers waited a esents of erred had ad driven s. Their ld fellow, side), was

about a blankets, th us all

round, then squatted on the floor in a semicircle, whilst one of their number stepped to the front, accompanied by his "backer," and addressed us in a very loud voice, with much gesticulation and repetition. The pith of his speech, which was a very long one, was that they were glad to be in the presence of a big white Chief sent by their Great Mother, the Queen, and that they would give us the right of way, with use of wood and water, through their land, for which privilege they demanded ten dollars a head annually for every man, woman, and child, but that they would sell none of their land, and wanted no white settlers to live amongst them. Colonel Wolseley's reply, which was very short, was that he was very glad to see them, but had no concern with their lands, only requiring a right of way through their country; and that he was sorry he had no presents for them, having only provisions enough for his own people. We had a half-breed to interpret for us, who translated the Chippewa into French, and very bad French too. The pow-wow lasted some time, and we were all getting rather bored and glad to get rid of them, which we eventually did by shaking hands again all round, and giving them some small presents of flour and pork. The old chief, "Crooked

CHAP.

h

"

a

si

a

d

sľ

W

 $\mathbf{T}$ 

ĊO

tic

 $\mathbf{r}_{0}$ 

fas

ro

the

th

chi

 $_{\rm shi}$ 

use

ret

anc

alw

not

0**.0.1** 

Neck," is a cunning old savage. At their grand medicine ceremonies held about a month before our arrival, he appeared in a costume of his own, which he evidently considered the height of Chippewa fashion. He was quite naked, with the exception of a breech-cloth round his waist, but his body was painted a bright yellow, and he had a brass ring round his neck. On this occasion he refused to accept the presents that Mr. Simpson had brought for him, such as gaudy red shirts and coats and caps, just the thing to eatch the eye of an Indian, and please his fancy. "Am I a pike," said he with virtuous indignation, "to be eaught with such a bait as that? Shall I sell my land for a bit of red eloth? We will let the pale-faces pass through our country, but we will sell them none of our land, nor have any of them to live amongst us."

These Indians are polygamists, and marry as many wives as they can afford to keep. The women are very ugly, except in extreme youth, and speedily lose their good looks, and are old women at the age of thirty. They are excessively filthy in their habits, their persons are covered with vermin, and entirely innocent of soap and water. Old "Crooked Neck" had several wives of various degrees of dirt and ugliness, only one of whom was at all good-

### FORT FRANCES.

[CHAP.

vm.]

eir grand before our wn, which Chippewa exception body was brass ring refused to nd brought coats and an Indian, id he with ith such a r a bit of ss through ne of our ongst us." ry as many women are d speedily at the age y in their ermin, and " Crooked rees of dirt all good-

looking. She was a very young girl, and would have been almost pretty had she been properly "cleaned." The morality of the women is not of a high order, which is not to be wondered at, considering the state of degradation in which they are kept. Poor things! they are the slaves and drudges of the men, who loaf about, or sit and smoke at the doors of their lodges in lazy indolence, whilst the women cut wood, draw water, cook, &c. The men are too lazy even to fish, until hunger compels them to do so.

Their wigwams are made of a number of poles tied together at the top in the shape of a bell; round the bottom and nearly up to the top are fastened strips of birch-bark or deer-skin, leaving room for a doorway; the top is left open to let out the smoke of the fire which is lighted inside in the middle; the whole family, husband, wives and children, live together in one lodge. When they shift their camp, the poles are left standing for the use of the next comer, or for themselves when they return that way, but the strips of bark are rolled up and carried by the women in their canoe. The man always has a canoe to himself, in which he takes nothing but his gun and blankets, and " paddles his own canoe." The impedimenta of the party, the

CHAP.

s a

d

Ι

р

0

n

C

C

Т

household gods of the family, are taken by the squaws in their canoe. One's preconceived ideas of the North American Indian, as derived from the fascinating pages of Fenimore Cooper, or the romantic verses of the author of "Hiawatha," are rudely dispelled by the reality, and one is forced to doubt whether Longfellow ever saw much of the Chippewa Indian in his native wilds.

A day or two after our first audience with "Crooked Neck" we were favoured by a visit from another chief, whose name I forget, but who came from some distance to see the great Chief of the palefaces, accompanied by two of his wives and a male attendant. This fellow's dress was most absurd. To begin with, he was half red and half black, like the "Perfect Cure," or a clown in a pantomime. His coat was an old military scarlet coatee, with epaulettes and tawdry old gold lace very much the The right half of this coat had worse for wear. been cut off and replaced by a portion of a black coat, also adorned with lace on the collar and cuffs. His shirt was scarcely long enough for decency, and terminated in deer-skin mocassins and leggings reaching to the knee, prettily worked with beads, and fringed with many-coloured tassels. Round his body, like a Roman toga, was wrapped a red

### FORT FRANCES.

### [СНАР.

viii.]

en by the eived ideas d from the or the rowatha," are is forced to uch of the

ience with a visit from t who came of the paleand a male lost absurd. black, like pantomime. oatee, with y much the is coat had of a black r and cuffs. or decency, nd leggings with beads, Round his ped a red

blanket, which, when accidentally exposed or blown aside by the wind, left between his leggings and his shirt a "hiatus valde deflendus!" He also wore a handsome kind of cross-belt, thrown over his right shoulder like a sash of the present day, embroidered heavily with beads. On his head was a high wideawake hat, adorned with a green ribbon. His face was painted to match, the left side a bright red, the right its natural dark hue. When he turned suddenly round from left to right, the sudden change from red to black was most ludicrous, and made us laugh heartily. Otherwise, he was a finelooking savage, and when one did not see the red half of his nose, rather good-looking. We had a pow-wow with him, which ended as usual by his shaking hands with us two or three times all round, and then making off with his plug of tobacco, highly delighted at the gift.

At the great medicine ceremonics which these Indians hold every summer at Fort Frances for the purpose of initiating candidates into the mysteries of medicine, they go through extraordinary orgies, not unlike the old Roman Saturnalia. Part of the ceremony consists in killing every white dog they can get hold of, boiling the flesh, and feasting on it. The men dress up in the most outlandish manner:

CHAP.

one fellow danced a scalp dance with nothing on but a frock-coat; another had his body whitewashed as far as the waist, his left cheek painted green and the right blue, his ribs painted with black finger-marks as if he had been gripped in a deadly wrestle, his arms and feet painted to represent blood and bruises; in this hideous "attire" he danced a war dance, reciting his deeds of valour, and the scalps he had taken from the Sioux.

The candidates for "medicine-men" are taught the virtues of many wild roots and plants, in the use of which consists their only skill in curing Of anatomy or surgery they know nothing. disease. Some of these medicine-men know the uses of many deadly vegetable poisons, amongst which I was told of a plant the root of which possesses the horrible power of turning the complexion quite black. Mr. Pither pointed out to me a woman whom, he said, he had known as a young girl, at which time she was very pretty, and of comparatively a fair complexion. Some of this poison had been administered to her and had turned her quite black. Certainly, when I saw her, she was hideously black and ugly. They use also the root of the Sarsaparilla plant, the gold thread (good for ulcerated sore-throats), and the red willow, the bark of which makes a capital astrin-

[СПАР.

N.

v111.]

th nothing on body whitecheek painted ted with black ed in a deadly to represent s "attire" he eds of valour, the Sioux.

n" are taught plants, in the kill in curing know nothing. e uses of many ich I was told es the horrible te black. Mr. vhom, he said, hich time she ly a fair comdministered to ertainly, when d ugly. They plant, the gold s), and the red capital astrin-

### FORT FRANCES.

gent, as I myself found by practical experience, for one day, having strained my left wrist in rowing, Mr. Pither gathered some of the red willow, removed the outer bark, and scraping the inner bark, boiled it for about half an hour, and applied it to the wrist, giving great relief.

The portage at Fort Frances, which is a large cleared field covered with luxuriant grass, was formerly used by the Indians as a burial-ground. Some of the bodies were buried in the ground in the usual way; on one of them, a child's grave, which had been neatly fenced in by some sorrowing mother to preserve it from desceration, I was much touched at observing, carefully laid by the side of the grave, a child's paddle and little toy canoe. Human nature does not differ much all the world over-

"One touch of nature makes the whole world kin."

The bodies of the grea chiefs are, however, not buried in the ground, but placed in wooden boxes and hung up on a framework six or seven feet above the ground, suspended in mid-air, as it were. The effluvium from these boxes soon becomes very great, and as they are put up in the most conspicuous places, they are particularly objectionable. "Have I not my father's and my grandfather's bones?"

[CHAP.

I

С

n

S

h

b

h

 $\mathbf{f}$ 

t

h

t

h

said old "Crooked Neck" in his speech. We saw a great deal too much of "Crooked Neck" during our stay at Fort Frances; he used to stalk about, his sole covering being a blanket wrapped round him, long matted hair hanging over his shoulders, which he was too lazy to plait into two tails in the usual manner, and confined round the forehead by a piece of greasy ribbon. In this easy costume he would peer into our tents, or coolly walk into the room as we sat writing, evidently considering that the whole place belonged to him, and that we were only there on sufferance. His lodge was close by, and D— and I used to pass it every morning en our way to our matutinal plunge in the river.

When a chief is *buried* (not suspended in midair), it is the custom of the Chippewas to bury with him his gun and a kettle. The Indians of the plains, besides the gun, kill over the grave the dead chief's favourite horse, in order that when he arrives at the happy hunting grounds, he may be ready, mounted and armed. Is not this something like our own custom at a military funeral of leading the charger to the grave behind the coffin ? The connection of ideas and customs on this point is at least curious, though I have heard that ours is derived from an old German custom.

[СИАР.

viii.]

l in midoury with as of the rave the when he may be omething f leading a ? The point is nat ours

Before Colonel Wolseley left Fort Frances, he saw the whole of the regular troops and the first two brigades of militia pass on. As they went through, each brigade left what surplus stores they had brought with them to form a depôt of supplies at Fort Frances. A hospital was established capable of accommodating thirty-six patients, and a fieldoven was put up and a bakery started, by which means the rear brigades were served out with two days' fresh bread, a pleasant change after the hard biscuit. A company of the 1st Ontario Rifles was left as a garrison, and their camp was pitched on the grassy bank over the river close by the fort. Each brigade as it passed through also got rid of incompetent voyageurs, and out of six brigades twelve men were thus left behind, or an average of oneseventh, a high proportion, considering that they had already been freely weeded before leaving Shebandowan.

On the 5th August Mr. Monkman, a loyal English half-breed from Red River, arrived, bringing letters from the settlement to the 20th of July. During the troubles of the previous winter, Mr. Monkman had incurred the hatred of Riel's party for assisting the escape of Dr. Schultz; his life being in danger, he fled to Canada, crossing the dreary wilderness in

[CIIAP.

the depth of winter on snow-shoes. He had been warmly received in Ontario, and had been presented to H.R.H. Prince Arthur, who had made him a present of some tobacco. He passed through Fort William in June 1870 on his way to Red River, and promised Colonel Wolseley to come out and meet him at Fort Frances at the latter end of July with the latest news from Red River, and with information regarding supplies and the feasibility of using the road from the north-west angle of Lake of the Woods for the transport of the troops. He nobly kept his promise, and brought letters from Bishop Macrae and others, also one from "Henry Prince," the chief of the Saulteux or Swampy Indians at Red River, full of loyalty and breathing dislike to Riel and his party. The refrain of all these letters was the same-"Come on as quickly as you can, for the aspect of affairs is serious, and an Indian outbreak is imminent." Mr. Monkman had entered the settlement from the north-west angle, following his old blazed line along a good sandy ridge to White Mouth River, till he reached Mr. Snow's road, where he narrowly escaped capture from an outlying party of Riel's men. He strongly advocated taking the troops through this line, as he said that very little labour would make the swamps

[CIIAP.

vIII.]

FORT FRANCES.

had been presented de him a ough Fort River, and and meet July with 1 informay of using ake of the He nobly om Bishop ry Prince," ans at Red ke to Riel letters was an, for the ı outbreak tered the following ridge to Ir. Snow's e from an gly advoas he said e swamps

passable for carts, but other accounts did not agree with this description, and Colonel Wolseley had had too much already of one road to risk the success of the expedition on another which he had not seen himself, or through the eyes of a British officer. Mr. Monkman also brought the pleasing intelligence that six large Hudson's Bay boats had been sent up the Winnipeg River, well manned by experienced boatmen, to assist the expedition in descending the dangerous rapids of that river. The expenses of this had been defrayed by a subscription amongst the loyal inhabitants, and the boats were accompanied by the Reverend Mr. Gardiner, an energetic Presbyterian clergyman, who had been one of the principal promoters of the undertaking and had himself subscribed largely thereto.

Having carefully made every possible arrangement for supplying the brigades with guides across the Lake of the Woods, Colonel Wolseley started at daylight on the 10th August to catch Colonel Feilden and the leading brigades before they reached Fort Alexander.

# CHAPTER IX.

## RAINY RIVER AND LAKE OF THE WOODS.

AT daylight on the 10th, Colonel Wolseley left Fort Frances and resumed his journey in a bark canoe manned by Iroquois, and the gig kept company with its crew of soldiers. D---- and I had got rid of our French-Canadian voyageur, who was sick (a little sick of the hard work, too, perhaps), and in his place had got a young Iroquois Indian whose French name was "Baptiste." We soon found the benefit of the exchange, for there was not a smarter Indian in the whole expedition than young "Ba'tiste," always cheery and goodhumoured, ready either to take an oar or a paddle, and a capital fellow on a portage. Aided by the current, which runs about  $1\frac{1}{2}$  or 2 miles an hour, we descended Rainy River easily and quickly, making about  $5\frac{1}{2}$  miles per hour on an average. CHAP. IX.]

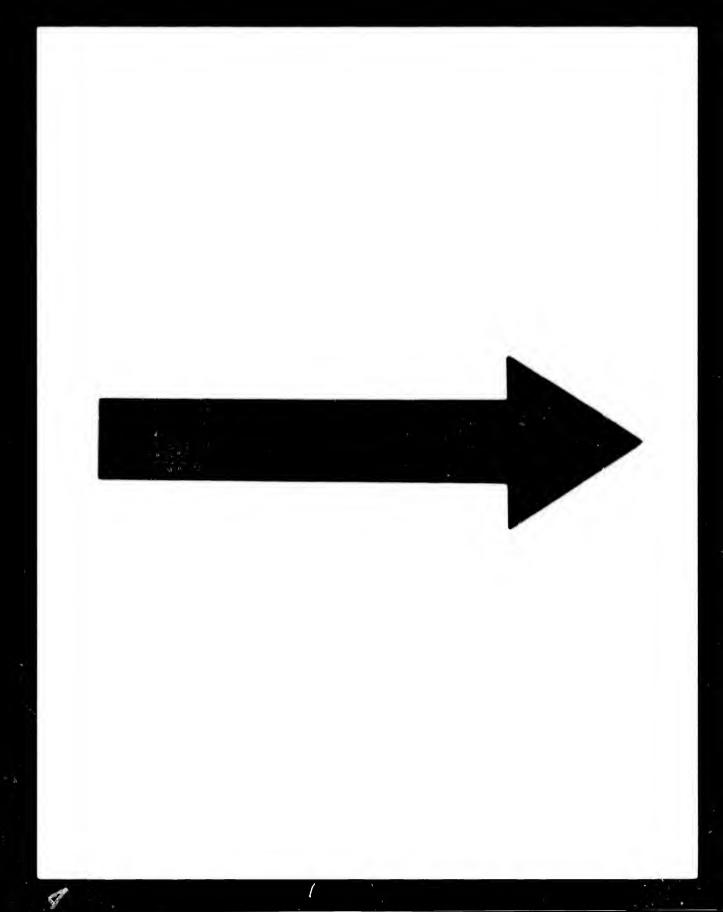
### RAINY RIVER.

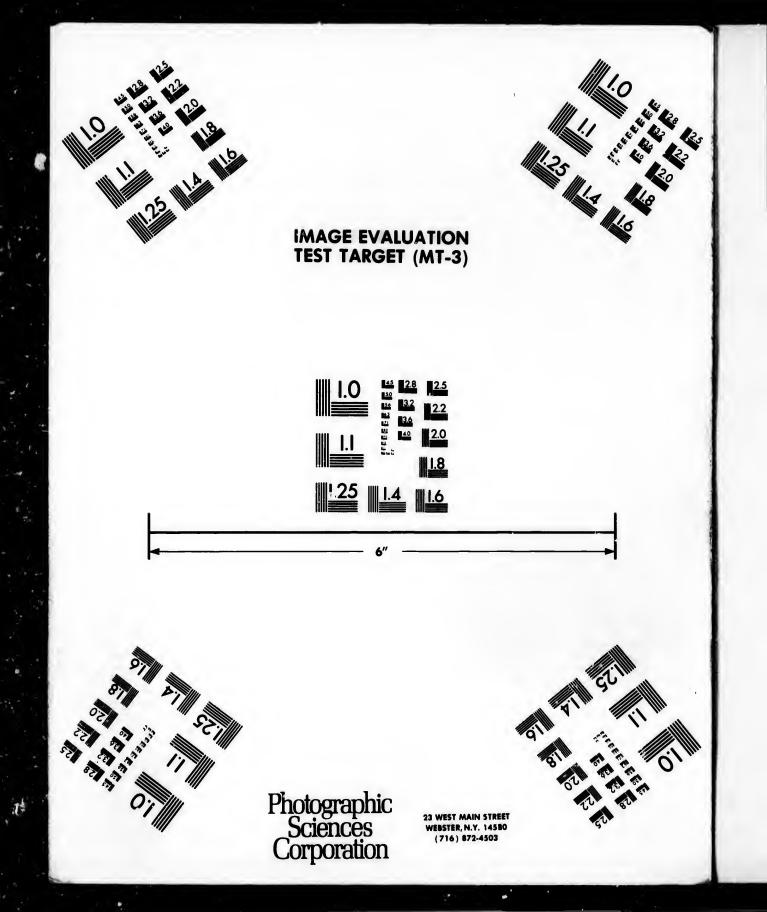
By one o'clock in the afternoon we had run about 40 miles, and stopped for an hour for dinner just at the foot of the second rapids.

The general course of this beautiful river is a few degrees to the north of west for a distance of 80 miles, following the windings of the river, or about 60 miles in a direct line. Its breadth is from 200 to 400 yards, though it becomes broader near its junction with Lake of the Woods. The navigation is unfortunately broken by the beautiful falls at Fort Frances, but from that point to its mouth, although there are two strong rapids, the "Manitou" and "Long-sault," about half-way down, yet these present no difficulty to the passage of a powerful steamer. The banks of the river are very beautiful; we passed groves of basswood and sturdy oaks, standing in grassy park-like expanses, and open glades stretching away into a forest of elm, ash, and balsam-poplar. The grass was very green and luxuriant; and the ground covered with climbing plants in rich profusion, the wild convolvulus, honeysuckle, helianthus, woodbine, and wild rose, giving it the appearance of an overgrown, long-neglected garden. Near the second rapid on the right bank of the river is an extensive area of open

'00DS.

lseley left in a bark gig kept — and I ageur, who , perhaps), bis Indian We soon there was expedition ind gooda paddle, d by the an hour, quickly, average.







# 158

# THE RED RIVER EXPEDITION.

CHAP.

prairie-like ground, destitute of trees, but covered with a dense growth of grasses and climbing plants; on it were two large mounds of very peculiar appearance, looking like tumuli, and called by the Indians "underground houses." They were about 30 or 40 feet high and 100 feet broad at the base. There were others also on the left bank, but so hidden in the woods that their size could not be ascertained. We could get no information as to the origin or nature of these tumuli, which looked not unlike mounds erected over an ancient Indian battle-field.

At 6 P.M. we stopped for the evening meal, and made preparations for drifting down the river during the night, as is done by the Hudson's Bay Company's boats. Just at sunset a most extraordinary flight of insects appeared on the They had pale, yellowish bodies about river.  $\frac{3}{4}$ -inch long, grey wings, and two long streamers running out from the tail an inch or more in They were moving up the river at a length. great rate, in a solid column about ten feet high and perhaps fifty feet broad, and at a distance gave the appearance of a thick mist hanging over the river; nearer, they looked like a storm of driving snow or sleet. As the gig pushed out

### RAINY RIVER.

CHAP.

1X.]

rees, but asses and c mounds ke tumuli, d houses." d 100 feet so on the that their hd get no c of these ds erected

ing meal, down the Hudson's et a most i on the ies about streamers r more in iver at a feet high distance t hanging storm of ashed out into the river amongst them, they parted in the midst like a column of fours to let it go through, carefully avoiding the boat. They made a most perceptible humming or buzzing noise, and, as they touched the water, remained on it, apparently unable to rise again. The fish were rising all round, devouring them greedily.

Having made our little preparations for the night, all hands in the gig turned in except one man to keep watch and steer; and as we lay in the stern-sheets smoking a final pipe, we anticipated a pleasant drift down the river, and hoped to get over a long way in this easy manner. It was a beautiful night, the moon was nearly at the full, and the ripple of the water under the bows of the gig, or the occasional stroke of Ba'tiste's paddle had a most soothing effect. But our hopes were doomed to be blighted; an ominous bank of clouds to windward rose higher and higher, a pelting storm of rain drenched us to the skin, and a furious westerly wind, right in our teeth, obliged us about midnight to put ashore. One of the men rigged up the sail as a temporary shelter, and we lay under it on the soaking wet ground, trying in vain to get a little sleep. The ground was at a steep slope and unpleasantly

СНАР.

r

b

sı

H

la

ag

of

n

bo

m

te

011

an

W(

 $^{\rm sh}$ 

an

bumpy, and the welcome return of daylight found us cramped, cold, and wet, and glad to refresh ourselves with a cup of hot tea and resume our journey.

As we approached the mouth, the river became broader, the banks still very pretty, though with fewer open park-like bits; long stretches of reedy, marshy ground fringed the banks, from which numerous young broods of ducks rose at our approach and flew past, presenting the most tempting double-shots. In the wide reaches of the river the strong westerly wind blowing against the current produced a rough chopping sea, against which we rowed hard for three hours, till we came to a small Hudson's Bay post, two miles from the mouth of the river, where we were glad to stop for Just then a canoe came up, bringing breakfast. letters from Rat Portage, announcing the arrival there of the six Hudson's Bay boats sent by the loyal English-speaking people of Red River. The letters begged Colonel Wolseley immediately to put two guns and as many regulars as possible into the boats and send them off to the settlement at once, as the people were in great dread of an Indian outbreak. The men who brought these letters were at once utilized as guides, and

### RAINY RIVER.

[CHAP.

1X.]

ight found to refresh resume our

ver became ough with s of reedy, rom which se at our the most ches of the ng against sea, against ill we came s from the to stop for b, bringing the arrival ent by the iver. The diately to as possible the settlereat dread o brought uides, and

handed over to K Brigade, which came up at that moment.

The little post at which we breakfasted is kept by a half-breed named Morrison, and is called "Hungry Hall," from the fact of a former resident having been several times nearly starved to death. Morrison had a cow and a small patch of potatoes, and might have had a nice little farm had he chosen to take the trouble, for the alluvial soil on the bank of the river is very rich, and would well repay the labour of cultivation; but the halfbreeds seldom care to till more ground than is sufficient to give them a scanty living. Leaving Hungry Hall, an extensive area of flat marshy land (portions of which would make good pasturage) marks the junction of Rainy River with Lake of the Woods. Our course here turning to the north, we made a fair wind of it, and setting both sails the gig slipped along, six or seven miles an hour, through the smooth water, protected by a number of long, low, sandy islands, on the other side of which the surf was beating angrily. Coming out from the shelter of these, we felt the full force of the gale, and soon shipped a green sea, which half filled the boat, and admonished us that it would be dangerous

fenap.

to cross the open lake, so we lowered the sails and rowed in to the nearest island. Captain Macdonald's company of the 1st Ontario Rifles coming up behind, followed our example; and as the wind continued all that day (the 11th), tents were pitched on the island to wait till the gale moderated.

Lake of the Woods is an enormous sheet of water about seventy-two miles long and nearly as much broad, but divided by a large promontory into three distinct lakes. On the south-western coast are numerous long, low sand-hills, and others in process of formation, which form a bar of many miles in length, guarding the mouth of the river. This part of the lake is sometimes called Sand-hill Lake from these curious sand dunes. The most noticeable feature of Lake of the Woods is the peculiar green colour of the water, arising from a profuse vegetable growth These are a minute, tubular, needle-(conferra). shaped organism, about half an inch in length, sometimes detached and sometimes clustered together in star-shaped forms: they abound all over the lake, in some places so thickly that the water has the consistence and colour of pea-soup. Some of the deep bays receding from the lake, such

### LAKE OF THE WOODS.

снар.

IX.

d the sails l. Captain tario Rifles mple; and (the 11th), rait till the

is sheet of and nearly promontory outh-western d-hills, and form a bar e mouth of s sometimes urious sand of Lake of lour of the ble growth ilar, needlein length, lustered toand all over it the water oup. Some lake, such as Clearwater Bay, &c., are free from this growth, but it extends even a few miles down the Winnipeg River below Rat Portage. It was impossible to drink the water, or use it for making tea or cooking, until it had been carefully strained. The temperature of the lake, perhaps owing to these *conferræ*, was very high, 75° Fahr., yet it freezes over its whole extent every winter.

From the north-west corner of the lake, the distance across country to Fort Garry is only a hundred and fifteen miles, for about eighty of which, a road, passable for earts, had been already The remaining thirty-five miles made. pass through a continuation of swamps or "muskegs," and it was through these that some people were anxious that the troops should march, declaring it was quite feasible. Colonel Wolseley was very anxious to do so, as he would thereby have saved upwards of a hundred and fifty miles, besides avoiding the dangerous rapids of the Winnipeg River; but the information concerning this road was not sufficiently reliable, and he wisely declined to risk the experiment. The troops had therefore to cross the whole length of Lake of the Woods to its northern shores, where it empties its waters into Lake Winnipeg, by the magnificent

Winnipeg River. The southern portion of Lake of the Woods is tolerably free from islands, and a long stretch of open water lay before us as we stood on "Detention Island," chafing at the delay caused by the gale. To the westward not a sign of land broke the vast expanse of water, stretching away to the horizon, as if it had been the ocean itself instead of an inland lake in the centre of a continent; to the northward, a "traverse" of ten miles to the nearest island lay before us, with the "white horses" rearing their angry heads and forbidding all hope of a speedy release from our little prison.

For the whole of that day and the next the gale continued, and we were at our wits' end to pass the time. The Colonel retired to his tent and played "patience," but our only amusement was to go to the windward side of the island, and watch the heavy line of breakers rolling in on the sandy beach, and then contrast our situation with that of friends at home grouse-shooting on the moors. As a slight relief to the monotony, the keen eye of Ba'tiste discovered something that looked like a flag on an island to the east, and by the aid of a telescope it was made out to be the Union Jack, and two men were seen walking

CHAP.

### LAKE OF THE WOODS.

[CHAP.

1X.]

of Lake of ands, and a a us as we t the delay not a sign c, stretching a the ocean centre of a erse" of ten us, with the ads and for-

the next our wits' tired to his only amuseside of the kers rolling ontrast our use-shooting monotony, hething that e east, and out to be en walking

on the shore close by. A canoe was sent over to find out the meaning of this extraordinary apparition, but returned reporting that they could see nobody; the flag and the men were gone. Whilst occupied with conjectures as to the explanation of this phenomenon, imagine our delight when a canoe arrived from Fort Frances bringing letters and newspapers from England! It was a regular God-send, and many were the speculations on the war just declared between France and Prussia. But we could not even bet on the result, for every one wanted to back the same side-France. Short-sighted mortals! It was certainly tantalizing to be wind-bound on a little island in a lake far away in the centre of the vast North American wilderness, cut off from all communication with the outside world, whilst events of such transcendent importance were taking place in Europe. The situation was novel if not exciting. Robinson Crusoe on his desert island was, however, worse off than we were, for at all events we had plenty to eat, though it was but salt pork and biscuit.

Towards the afternoon of the second day the wind gradually subsided, and by sunset the water was smooth enough to enable the large boats to continue their route, and K Brigade re-embarked

166

and started off at 8 P.M. But there was still a heavy swell, and the Indians refused to budge a step, declaring it was not safe for the canoc, which would break in two pieces over the long waves. Colonel Wolseley, being determined to get on himself somehow or other, changed places with D——, and the gig was launched and prepared for a start. Just then, the flag we had seen on the island was explained by the arrival of three large Hudson's Bay boats, which proved to be some of those sent from Red River; they brought letters from Rat Portage, from Colonel Feilden, who reported that he had taken the other three himself and had started down the Winnipeg.

Now more than ever anxious to get on and catch the leading brigades, Colonel Wolscley resolved to start at once, and accordingly at 10 P.M. we put off. It was a bright, cloudless night with a full moon, and the men with light hearts and strong hands pulled with a will, glad to get away from their island prison. To the west and north no land was to be seen, to the east we could just make out the dim outline of a belt of islands several miles away, and behind us the island we had left was soon lost to view. We steered by the stars, shaping our course by the pointers of the

[CHAP.

### LAKE OF THE WOODS.

[CHAP.

IX.]

was still a to budge the canoe, r the long ined to get places with d prepared d seen on al of three ved to be ey brought el Feilden, other three mipeg.

et on and Volseley regly at 10 dless night ight hearts l, glad to o the west he east we f a belt of the island steered by iters of the Great Bear. Although the wind had gone down there was still a heavy sea, a long rolling swell from the N.W., which justified the refusal of the cautious Iroquois to venture out in their frail birch-bark canoe. After three hours' hard rowing we came to an island where we put ashore at 1 A.M., made a big fire, and bivouacked till daylight. To me it had been a novel and curious sensation, which I enjoyed immensely; steering a boat at night by the stars, out of sight of land on a fresh-water lake, is not possible everywhere.

After four hours' rest, the crew of the gig were again under weigh at 5 A.M., steering N.N.W. A group of islands lay to the eastward, through which an opening was sought in vain to escape the rough sea, which was gradually but slowly subsiding; to the west, still no land to be seen, nothing to break the monotony of sea and sky. At last we got into an interminable labyrinth of islands, to find the right way through which would have required the education of a lifetime. On and on we went from "morn till dewy eve," steering by compass, with the aid of Mr. Dawson's map, a very inaccurate chart, until it was too dark to see any more, when we bivouacked on the nearest island.

Knowing that we could not be far from the

CHAP.

entrance to the river, we were off again next morning at 4 o'clock, hoping to reach Rat Portage by breakfast time. After rowing and sailing for some time we got into a deep bay, which proved to be a cul de sac, so we had to turn back again. From the course we had steered we knew we had reached the north shore of Lake of the Woods, but the entrance to the river we could not find. After trying a few more likely-looking openings to the northward in vain, the uncomfortable feeling began to creep over us that we had lost our way; however, there was nothing for it but to persevere, so on and on we blundered, hopelessly exploring every channel amongst the labyrinth of islands which appeared to lead in the right direction. We wandered on in this disagreeable way for hour after hour, until the sun began to get low in the sky, and we were still as far off the river as ever. This portion of Lake of the Woods is a mass of islands; in Lac des Milles Lacs and in Rainy Lake we thought we had seen a *few* islands, but anything to compare with the myriads in Lake of the Woods we had never before met with. We might have been wandering about amongst them to this day, had we not fortunately caught

### LAKE OF THE WOODS.

CHAP.

1X.]

gain next at Portage sailing for ich proved back again. knew we ke of the we could ely-looking the uncomis that we vas nothing blundered, mongst the to lead in on in this , until the d we were his portion islands; in v Lake we at anything ke of the We with. ongst them ely caught

sight of an Indian encampment. Quickly rowing up, we found a good-humoured old rean and two hideous old squaws, besides the inevitable children and white mongrel dog, all gazing at us with open eyes. We could not speak the Chippewa language, and they could not speak English or French, so here was a dilemma: but by dint of signs we made them understand what we wanted. A present of tea and biscuit to the women and a stick of tobacco to the man sharpened their intellects, and the man got into his canoe and paddled away, and we followed, devoutly hoping that he was taking us to Rat Portage. Such proved to be the case, and at S P.M., tired and hungry, we arrived at the portage, glad to get some supper (for we had fasted all day) and go to sleep. Our non-arrival had caused some fears for our safety, and Lieutenant Butler had started in a canoe to go and light a huge beacon-fire at the "Devil's Rock," a conspicuous, rocky island some fourteen miles out in the lake. We found that the Hudson's Bay boats and the canoe had arrived early that morning, having passed us on the lake whilst we were wandering about. The moral of my story is-Do not attempt to cross Lake of the Woods without a guide!

# CHAPTER X.

### THE WINNIPEG RIVER.

" Illi robur et æs triplex Circa pectus erat, qui fragilem truci Commisit pelago ratem Primus."

THE Hudson's Bay Company's post at Rat Portage is but a small affair, three log-houses roofed with bark and enclosed by a high wooden palisading. The Company maintain thirteen men at this post, but nine of them are employed at small outlying posts in the vicinity. Mr. Maepherson, the official in charge, was most civil and obliging. He is a Scotch half-breed, a quiet, gentlemanly, elderly man, who has received a good education at Montreal. He had been for thirteen years buried alive at this post ! Is it not a most extraordinary thing, that men of any education can be found to stand a life like that, utterly cut off from the rest of mankind,

### THE WINNIPEG RIVER.

спар. х.]

receiving news from the outside world only once or twice a year, to all intents or purposes dead or sleeping? Like Jairus's daughter, one might say of a man living at one of these Hudson's Bay posts for a series of years,

## ούκ απέθαι εν αλλά καθεύδει.

I ventured to question Mr. Macpherson on this subject, and he replied simply, that he had long since ceased to feel anything of the kind; he had his little farm and his wife and family, and was quite happy It is curious how soon men get and contented. accustomed to a wild and solitary life; one can understand a man who had committed some frightful crime rushing off, stung with remorse, to bury himself in the remotest corner of the globe, as Sir Walter Scott describes in the "Pirate," but it is not so easy to understand how young men who have not completed their fifth lustre can thus shut themselves up far from the busy world, with no companions but Esquimaux or Chippewa Indians. Not theirs the missionary fervour of men zealous for their faith, or even the all-absorbing thirst for gold, for the Company do not pay their servants highly, and preclude them by the most rigid rules from entering into any speculation on their own account. Yet they seem

Rat Portage roofed with a palisading. at this post, all outlying , the official g. He is a elderly man, at Montreal. alive at this thing, that stand a life of mankind,

to like the life, and after a brief return to eivilization are generally glad to get back to their solitary posts. Mr. Macpherson had a few acres of wheat, barley, and potatoes, some pigs and cows, and any number of mangy-looking pariah dogs. These dogs are of all sizes and colours, nasty-looking brutes, but very useful. They do all the winter work, galloping for miles over the frozen snow, dragging small sledges.

At this place there are three portages; that is to say, the river, which is here some three miles broad, finds its way down to the lower level below by three distinct waterfalls. The regular portage, which is three miles from the Hudson's Bay post and principally used for big boats, is 130 yards long; but the portage we passed over is close to the post, about 300 yards long, and very rough. The morning after our arrival we breakfasted with Mr. Macpherson, and heard a great deal about the dangers of the Winnipeg River; indeed we heard so many stories of hair-breadth escapes amid the dangerous rapids and whirlpools, that, like the boy who has been regaled on thrilling ghost stories until he is afraid to go to sleep at night, we were half frightened out of our wits at the dangers that lay before us. Colonel Wolseley made every effort to procure guides and skilled bow-men and steersmen for each

[CHAP.

### THE WINNIPEG RIVER.

[CHAP.

x.]

o civilization olitary posts. neat, barley, any number dogs are of es, but very alloping for nall sledges. ges; that is three miles level below lar portage, 's Bay post yards long ; to the post, The morning Macpherson, gers of the hany stories erous rapids o has been he is afraid thtened out before us. to procure en for each

brigade, and sent off Lieutenant Butler in a light canoe to Fort Alexander, at the mouth of the river, to collect men from that post, and send them up to Islington Mission, where the most dangerous part of the river begins. In the evening of that day Lieutenant-Colonel McNeill, V.C., and Mr. Jolly arrived and joined our camp. They had left Shebandowan on the 3rd of August, and had come through as fast as possible in a birch-bark canoe.

At 2 P.M. on Tuesday the 16th we started again, two canoes and the gig, a pleasant party of six, to make the descent of the river Winnipeg. This noble river issues from Lake of the Woods through several gaps in the northern rim of the lake, and flows through many tortuous and distinct channels for many miles of its course. Its windings are so abrupt and opposite, that its course is sometimes N.N.E. and at other places S.W. by S. It is very broad and deep, sometimes expanding into large lakes, full of rocky islands and bounded by precipitous cliffs of granite. During its course of 163 miles it descends 350 feet by a succession of magnificent cataracts. Some of its rapids and falls present the wildest and most picturesque scenery, displaying every variety of tumultuous caseades and foaming rapids, with treacherous whirlpools, whitened with

foam, and huge swelling waves rising massive and green over dangerous hidden rocks. It is quite beyond my power to convey an idea of the majestic scenery of this noble river, but it is so deeply impressed on my mind, that anything previously seen in the way of river scenery seemed at once to fade into insignificance before the grandeur of the Winnipeg River. Among the most beautiful of many very beautiful falls, the "Slave Falls" and "Silver Falls" bear away the palm.

We made the journey from Rat Portage to Fort Alexander in four days and a half, but to do this we had to work from early dawn to late at night, only snatching a couple of hours' rest for breakfast and dinner, and sometimes putting off our mid-day meal altogether, and making supper do duty for both. On the first evening, the 16th, we ran "Les Dalles" Rapids without any trouble, and camped about 25 miles from Rat Portage. The fine weather which had accompanied us from Shebandowan, here began to desert us, and drizzling rain with raw, cold, foggy weather took its place.

On the 17th, we ran the "Grande Décharge" Rapids, the first of any importance. The river, at least that portion of it which we followed (for there are numerous channels), is compressed at this point

СНАР.

### THE WINNIPEG RIVER.

[СНАР.

x.]

nassive and It is quite the majestic so deeply previously d at once to deur of the peautiful of Falls " and

age to Fort o do this we night, only reakfast and id-day meal by for both. Les Dalles" d about 25 ther which here began cold, foggy

Décharge" he river, at l (for there this point into a narrow cleft between high granite rocks, which force it down a steep incline with tremendous Everything had to be taken out of the boats fury. and carried over the portage, and then the boats were run down the rapids, four men rowing and the two Indians steering,-one at the bow, the other at Whilst at Rat Portage, Baptiste had cut the stern. and fashioned a fine broad paddle for this purpose out of a young spruce tree, and took his place at the bow flourishing this paddle over his head ready for action. We went over at a tremendous pace, so close to the cliff at one side (in order to avoid a half-sunken rock) that the starboard oars had to be unshipped and run in to avoid the cliff. Scarcely realizing the speed at which we were going, I was late in running in my oar, and consequently lost a rowlock by it, besides nearly breaking the oar and upsetting the boat. Of course when the oar touched the cliff it partially turned the boat's head, and Ba'tiste had to give a superhuman heave with his paddle to clear the sunken rock. In doing this his paddle broke in two like a stick of sealing-wax, and had he not, quick as lightning, seized a scull, which was fortunately at hand, and forced the boat's head round with it, we should have been on the rock and upset in the twinkling of an eye. It was a close

shave, but we had closer shaves than that before we got to the mouth of the Winnipeg !

The same day we passed Yellow Mud Portage, Pine Portage, Cave Rapids, and one or two smaller rapids, which were run without lightening the boats. On this river there are some twenty-five portages, and any number of rapids of various degrees of danger, but to do justice to their manifold beauties would require a far abler pen than mine. As I write, the recollections of those magnificent rapids and cascades crowd thickly upon me,

> "And I would that my tongue could utter The thoughts that arise in me."

Running a rapid is one of the most exciting things in the world; independently of the danger of being upset and drowned (which last would be a tolerable certainty in anything *like* a rapid), there is a charm about the novelty of it, combined with the wild and picturesque scenery, which is wonderfully fascinating. The Iroquois Indians are famous fellows for this work, and far superior to the Chippewas. The latter run rapids very fairly, but would avoid them if they could, whereas I verily believe that the former actually *prefer* rapids to smooth water. It was quite a sight to see young Ba'tiste taking the

176

### CHAP.

### THE WINNIPEG RIVER.

[СНАР.

x.]

that before

ud Portage, two smaller ntening the twenty-five of various their manier pen than those magdy upon me,

r

eiting things ger of being e a tolerable e is a charm he wild and fascinating. ws for this ewas. The avoid them e that the water. It taking the gig down a rapid. His post was in the bow, the post of honour, and a better man it would be hard to find. We soon got unlimited confidence in him, and would have run any rapid under his leader-The other Indian we had in the gig was an ship. old weather-beaten Iroquois, an uncle of Baptiste's, a man of enormous size and strength. He usually took the stern, giving up the post of honour in the bow to the younger and more active man. Our preparations for running a rapid were very simple: a rowlock was shipped in the sternpost, and Michel took his place there, and steered with the stiffest and heaviest oar in the boat. The rudder was never used, as it did not give sufficient power. Baptiste placed himself in the bow with a scull in his hand, which he used as a paddle, and a spare one close by in case of accident, a precaution which twice saved us from upsetting. In order to give room to the steersmen we pulled only four oars, which were usually taken by the four best oarsmen in the gig. As the noise of the rapid first reached our ears, young Baptiste's eyes would sparkle with delight, and even the phlegmatic old Michel, who scarce ever uttered a word from morning to night, would brighten up and look quite pleased. As we neared the rapid, old Michel would say, "Hut! hut!" in

quick, sharp tones, which meant "pull, pull!" and pull we did, like demons, as if we had been doing the last fifty yards in a neck-and-neck race at Henley. As we took the first plunge, young Baptiste would wave his paddle in the air with one wild yell of delight, and then, as if ashamed of his momentary weakness, would address himself to his task, and with consummate skill and strength, plunging his paddle now this side, now that, would guide us down amidst the seething caldron of waters that hissed and boiled around, threatening every moment to swallow up the little gig. Not a word was spoken after Baptiste's wild shout, except rapid directions in the Iroquois language between the two Indians, the oarsmen pulling as if for bare life. Such moments of wild excitement, brief as they are, are worth years of tame existence, and make one feel inclined to look with pity on those who have never experienced that thrilling sensation that stirs every fibre in the frame and makes the heart leap with the most intense ex-Is there a single man in the Red River citement. Expedition who will ever forget the glorious rapids of that noble Winnipeg River? A hot corner in a day's battue-shooting, or a quick thing with the Pytchley, are exciting enough in their way, but

CHAP.

a

a

e

d

a

st

W

tł

st

W

### THE WINNIPEG RIVER.

[CHAP.

x.]

oull!" and had been -neck race ige, young e air with if ashamed ess himself nd strength, that, would caldron of threatening e gig. Not wild shout, is language pulling as excitement, he existence, ith pity on at thrilling e frame and intense exe Red River rious rapids ot corner in ng with the r way, but they lack that element of danger which lends such a zest to every sport, when the heart is young and the life-blood courses quickly through the veins.

Many a dangerous rapid did we run in this way, but there was one that I shall never forget, the longest day I live: it scared us all, and was indeed enough to frighten the oldest voyageur. Coming on to it from above we could not see what we were rushing into, but followed the lead of the Colonel's canoe, and before we knew where we were, we were in the middle of it. Imagine an enormous volume of water hurled headlong down a steep incline of smooth, slippery rock against a cluster of massive boulders, over which it dashed madly with a roar like thunder, foaming along until it reached the level below, where its exhausted fury subsided into circling eddies, and deep treacherous whirlpools. Into this fearful abyss of waters we dashed, old Michel boldly steering straight down the centre of it; and as we tore down the incline at railroad speed with the green white-tipped waves curling their monstrous heads high over the gunwale of the boat, we held our very breath for awe, and for a second or two forgot to row, till the sharp admonition

CHAP.

of Michel aroused us from our stupor. By a great exertion of skill on the part of the two Indians the boat's head was turned sharply to the left, and caught the back-water of the eddy, in which we floated quictly and in safety, and gazed in utter bewilderment at the mighty rapid we had just run with no worse accident than a good ducking. We were all rather scared, but one of our crew, a Londoner, was fairly pale with terror -"His coward lips did from their colour fly"and though his comrades chaffed him freely, and each one disclaimed any fear on his part, yet there was not one of us who would have cared to repeat the experiment. This rapid was at Island Portage, and the gig was almost the only boat that ran it, the others being taken over the portage. It was the most dangerous rapid that we ran; the slightest touch on one of those huge boulders, and the boat must have gone to pieces instantaneously, crushed like a cockle-shell, and the crew would have been beyond human aid, for the whirlpools and eddies at the foot of the rapid would have sucked down the strongest swimmer.

But if he who first committed his frail bark to the sea must have been clothed in triple shield of brass, what shall be said of the man who first

#### THE WINNIPEG RIVER.

[CHAP.

x.]

By a great two Indians to the left, y, in which d gazed in pid we had an a good but one of with terror olour fly"freely, and is part, yet have cared pid was at ost the only en over the rapid that those huge ne to pieces hell, and the aid, for the f the rapid swimmer. s frail bark

triple shield n who first

ventured out in a birch-bark canoe, that frailest of frail crafts, or still more of him who ran the first rapid in such a crazy concern? The slightest touch on a rock is sufficient to tear a hole in it, and in rough weather on the large lakes there is always a danger of its breaking its back over a wave. Still, in experienced hands, a bark canoe is safe enough, and from its lightness and portability is the proper craft for navigating the rivers and lakes of North America. Our boats were declared to be quite unfit for running rapids, and some of them undoubtedly were, but, with extreme care and a more than ordinary share of good luck, the soldiers managed to get along in them, and descended the Winnipeg River in safety, though with several hair-breadth escapes.

On the 18th we passed "Chute à Jacquot," and "Trois Pointes des Bois," necessitating four portages round these various falls, each having its own special beauty, but all embracing scenery of the loveliest description, and in the evening reached "Slave Falls," one of the most beautiful bits on the river. The canoe portage is round a jutting ledge of rock just above the falls, and very dangerous to approach, except for skilled boatmen well acquainted with the place. Colonel Wolseley's canoe, which

CHAP.

was leading the way, seemed to disappear, as if it were going to shoot the falls, then suddenly turned sharp round to the right and shot into land, quite close to the edge of the falls; but the Indians in Colonel McNeill's canoe, who were Chippewas, were afraid to venture, and stopped higher up. The gig of course did not go near it, but went to the regular portage for big boats, some 500 yards above. Our camp that night was on a level rocky plateau, almost overlooking the falls, and in the midst of such scenery as it is impossible to attempt The charm of romance, too, was not to describe. wanting, for there is an old Indian legend connected with the spot, which tells how, many years ago, two Sioux prisoners, that had been long kept in slavery by their enemies, the Chippewas, were one day put out of their misery, with a refinement of cruelty peculiar to the North American Indian. They were bound back to back, placed in a canoe, and allowed to go over the falls, where they were of course dashed to pieces. Hence the name of "Slave Falls."

Next day, the 19th, we passed "La Barrière" Portage, the "Otter Rapids" and the dreaded "Seven Portages." These are about three miles long, and are simply an unbroken series of rapids,

#### THE WINNIPEG RIVER.

[CHAP.

x.]

ar, as if it enly turned land, quite Indians in Chippewas, higher up. ut went to 500 yards level rocky and in the to attempt oo, was not l connected years ago, ng kept in , were one inement of an Indian. n a canoe, here they the name

Barrière" e dreaded hree miles of rapids, falls, whirlpools, and eddies, necessitating seven distinct portages, some of the approaches to and departures from which are very dangerous, and require skilful management. On the following day, the 20th, we reached Fort Alexander about 8.30 P.M., having made 16 portages in the last two days. D--- and I were quite done up; we had worked hard to keep up with Colonel Wolseley's light canoe, and had been wet through all day and every day. In running one of the last rapids we had a very narrow escape of being upset. Michel let the boat graze a rock : instantly she heeled over on to her side, my oar was whipped out of my hand, and I myself thrown violently on my back, and for a moment I thought it was all up with us, but she had only grazed, and the rush of water carried her past; and as she righted, Michel picked up my oar and handed it to me, and we went on as if nothing had happened. It was a rough, boisterous rapid with strong eddies and whirlpools; we were quite alone, the two canoes having gone on; and it was nearly dark; so had we been upset, we should have had small chance of getting ashore.

Of the eight portages we made that day one was 1320 yards long, the others varying from 150 to

15

CHAP.

350 yards. The two portages at the "Silver Falls" are steep and rough, but the falls themselves are worthy of their name. They are, I should imagine, the most beautiful on this river, or indeed on any It is impossible to conceive anything river. to surpass them. The volume of water is very great, and the seenery magnificent and picturesque; but we were in such a hurry to get on that we had little time to admire their beauties. The lights of Fort Alexander, visible some distance up the river, stimulated us to renewed exertions in the prospect of food and rest, and at last we arrived there, late in the evening, tired, wet, cold, and hungry. "No more portages, thank God!" we exclaimed, as the boat grounded on the sandy beach and we answered the cheery hail of the men of the 60th, all of whom, with the Royal Artillery and Royal Engineers, had arrived before us.

Fort Alexander is prettily situated on the left bank of the Winnipeg River, about a couple of miles above its junction with Lake Winnipeg. It is a larger and more important post than Fort Frances, and has a more imposing appearance, standing on high ground forty or fifty feet above the river. From the top of a wooden tower thirty feet high, built in front of the post, an

#### THE WINNIPEG RIVER.

Silver Falls " emselves are uld imagine, leed on any re anything ater is very picturesque; that we had 'he lights of up the river, e prospect of re, late in the "No more as the boat

"No more as the boat nswered the ll of whom, gincers, had

on the left a couple of annipeg. It than Fort appearance, feet above oden tower te post, an extensive view can be had of the surrounding country; to the right, the broad river is visible for many miles winding amongst the thick pine woods; to the left, the vast expanse of Lake Winnipeg spreading out like the ocean itself, as far as the eye can reach. The soil round the fort is very good, and the erops luxuriant.

Mr. Donald Smith, who was awaiting the arrival of Colonel Wolseley, kindly gave us supper, to which we did ample justice. Seldom have I enjoyed anything more thoroughly than the fresh bread and butter which he set before us, or the pipe of peace which followed it, to which the happy consciousness that the hateful portage-strap would cease to gall our foreheads for some time to come, lent an additional feeling of freedom and repose.

CHAP.

x.]

## CHAPTER XI.

### ON TO FORT GARRY.

THE latest news from Red River was to the effect that Riel had called a meeting of the French halfbreeds, which was attended by 600 men, and had endeavoured to organize an armed resistance to the entry of the troops, but that his adherents had refused to join him in this mad attempt, and declined to have anything more to do with him and his plans. It seemed therefore that no opposition was to be apprehended, and in view of the certainty of being warmly welcomed by the loyal section of the inhabitants, Colonel Wolseley resolved not to wait for the Militia, but to push on at once with the Regulars. When passing the two leading brigades of the 1st Ontario Rifles a day or two before on the river, Colonel Wolseley had promised to wait half a day for them at Fort Alexander;

CHAP. XI.]

but as they did not arrive, the bugles sounded the "advance" at 3 P.M. on the 21st of August, and the men embarked and set sail to a favouring breeze. There were eight brigades, about fifty boats; and as the little fleet ran down the river before wind and tide, the sight was novel and interesting. One might almost have fancied at a little distance that it was a Danish flotilla, led by some Viking of old, making a descent on an enemy's coasts.

Colonel Wolseley accompanied Mr. Donald Smith in a big Hudson's Bay boat, whose large square sail towered over the little lugs of the smaller boats, and led the way steering well "out to sea" to make a good offing. The fleet followed as fast as oars and sails would take them, and bore up for "Elk Island," twenty miles off, which they reached at sunset, and camped for the night in a lovely little bay. It seemed as if nature had designed this island for the express purpose of sheltering the boats. The wind was southerly and the bay had a north aspect, looking out on to the lake, whose waves rippled gently on a smooth sandy beach, charming enough to have made tho fortune of a European watering-place. And who shall say that this little island and its beautiful

187

to the effect French halfen, and had stance to the herents had ttempt, and ith him and o opposition he certainty l section of ved not to t once with wo leading lay or two d promised Alexander ;

bay may not at some future day become the favourite summer resort of the wealthy inhabitants of Red River, the Brighton of the Winnipeg belles? When emigration shall have covered the fertile prairies of the North-west with a teeming population, and towns and cities have sprung up over the length and breadth of the land, Elk Island may rival the attractions of Newport and Saratoga.

But when we ran into the little bay and sprang ashore on the sandy beach, Nature had reigned sole mistress for countless ages, and the primeval woods rang for the first time to the sound of the white man's axe. The life and bustle imparted to the quiet bay by the arrival of the troops enhanced the wild beauty of the scene; and the boats drawn up on the beach, with their sails half furled, the white tents dotted about amongst the trees, the ruddy glow of the camp-fires lighting up the figures of the men as they bent over the *frying-pans* or peered into the *kettles* with anxious interest,—all these made up a picture worthy of an artist's pencil.

An early hour next morning beheld the flotilla again under weigh steering across the south-eastern portion of Lake Winnipeg to the mouths of the

CHAP.

0

a

0

is

r

1

b

le

c

fi

is

T

a li

le L

h

A

b

e

[CHAP.

x1.]

ecome the inhabitants Winnipeg overed the a teeming sprung up land, Elk wport and

and sprang ad reigned e primeval and of the mparted to s enhanced pats drawn furled, the trees, the the figures *ng-pans* or erest,—all an artist's

he flotilla th-castern ns of the Red River. Lake Winnipeg is half as large again as Lake Ontario! It covers an area of 9,000 square miles, and is 264 miles long by an average of 35 wide. Not a bad-sized pond! The southern portion of the lake is very shallow, the depth of water not exceeding two or three feet at a distance of a couple of miles from shore, and it is remarkable for the same green confervoid growth as Lake of the Woods; the temperature of the water, too, is very high. The fleet had a quick and prosperous run from Elk Island, entering the Red River about 12.30 P.M. Red River flows into Lake Winnipeg by three mouths through an immense area of low land, of about the same level as the lake, and covered with rushes and willows, which the spring freshets annually overflow. Land, properly so called, is not met with till six or seven miles from the lake. The passage up the river was slower than that across the lake, the boats having to keep in two lines in proper order, by brigades. Colonel Wolseley sent his canoe ahead, with Mr. Irvine and Lieutenant Butler to keep a sharp look-out, and himself led the fleet, followed by Colonel Feilden. At nightfall the camp was pitched on the right bank just below the Indian settlement, and about eleven miles from the Lower or Stone Fort. A

grand visit of ceremony was paid to Colonel Wolseley by the chief of the Swampy Indians, "Henry Prince," accompanied by a number of his warriors, all decked out in feathers and paint. The same sort of thing took place as at other "durbars" held at Fort Frances with the "noble Indian," much talk of loyalty to their "Great Mother" and steady adherence to British rule. The interview ended as usual by a substantial present of pork and flour, which appeared to afford the "braves" the most intense gratification.

The most curious thing was the utter ignorance of every one as to events going on in the neighbouring parishes. No one could give any information as to what was going on in Fort Garry, and the Indians declared that they had no idea that the expedition had left Lake of the Woods until they saw the boats coming round the point opposite their wigwams.

Colonel Wolseley took every precaution to prevent the news of our arrival from spreading, and after dark dispatched a trusty messenger on horseback to the Stone Fort to fetch Mr. Flett, the Hudson's Bay Company's official in charge of that post. He arrived in the middle of the night, but could give no information, except that Riel and

СНАР.

to Colonel apy Indians, umber of his paint. The er "durbars" ble Indian," Mother" and he interview sent of pork he "braves"

CHAP.

x1.]

er ignorance n the neighe any infor-Fort Garry, nad no idea the Woods d the point

tion to preeading, and er on horse-. Flett, the arge of that a night, but t Riel and his men were still in possession of the fort and busily employed in carting away their plunder from the Hudson's Bay Company's stores, and that Bishop Taché was daily expected to arrive from Canada with an amnesty for Riel in his pocket. He also said that opinions differed as to whether we should meet with resistance, whether Riel would bolt, or come out to meet us and *hand over* the duties of his office, but that Riel meant fighting if he could only get his men to back him up.

We were under weigh again next morning at daylight, in a drizzling rain, and reached the Stone Fort or "Lower Fort Garry," as it is sometimes called, at 8 o'clock. Here the kindness of Mr. Donald Smith had prepared a sumptuous breakfast for the officers, to which the most ample justice was done. Colonel Wolseley ordered the boats to be lightened of all superfluous stores in order to reach Fort Garry if possible before dark, and only four days' provisions were taken on, the remainder being left at the Stone Fort.

Captain Wallace's company was detached as an advanced guard and flanking party on the left bank of the river, with orders to keep about a quarter of a mile in front of the boats and to

detain all persons on their way up the river, so as to prevent the news of our approach from being conveyed to Fort Garry. A number of horses and carts were procured, and the men of this company were mounted on them, to their great delight. They seemed to think it fine fun scouring over the country as "Mounted Rifles." One man, being asked if he could ride, said he did not know whether he could or not, as he had never tried, and immediately proceeded to mount from the wrong side. Two signalmen with flags were sent with the mounted company, and were very useful in communicating orders to and fro, from the Commander's boat to the advanced guard. Lieutenant Butler was sent up the right bank on horseback, to patrol along the road and communicate with the boats every now and then. By these precautions it was found, as the force advanced, that the actual appearance of the boats was the first intimation that the people had of the arrival of the expedition. The country on the left bank is tolerably well settled, clean white houses and neat farms abutting on the river; but the right bank is more wooded and very sparsely settled, there being at some places intervals of miles without a house to be seen. Many of the settlers

CHAP.

[CHAP.

x1.]

he river, so from being f horses and his company eat delight. ouring over man, being l not know never tried, nt from the rs were sent very useful o, from the uard. Lieunk on horsecommunicate By these e advanced, ats was the the arrival he left bank houses and it the right sely settled, miles with-

the settlers

turned out and fired off guns as salutes when they saw the boats, but no other demonstrations were made. The two 7-pounder guns were mounted in the bows of the Royal Artillery boats, and everything was in readiness in case Riel should dispute the passage up the river. In this way, keeping up a constant communication with the flanking party on our right (which being mounted was able to cover a large extent of country), we advanced steadily but slowly, pulling up against the stream, until it was time to halt for the night.

The camp was pitched on the left bank, six miles by land from Fort Garry, the distance by water being eight or nine. Outlying picquets were thrown out on both sides of the river, and a chain of sentries posted round the camp. Captain Wallace's company established itself in a farmhouse about 600 yards off, with an advanced party on the main road, so that all communication between Fort Garry and the settlements in rear of the force was cut off. It had been Colonel Wolseley's intention to march at a very early hour next morning upon the fort, but about 10 P.M. a violent gale of wind sprung up from the N.W., accompanied by torrents of rain, which continued

without intermission all night, rendering the roads nearly impassable. The unfortunate piequets and sentries looked more like drowned rats than human beings, and the men were so done up with cold and wet, that Colonel Wolseley was obliged to change his plans and continue the advance in the boats. Breakfast put a little life into the men, though everything was so wet that it was difficult to get the fires lit, and at 6 A.M. the men re-embarked and rowed on up the river, the rain still falling in torrents. Spies had been sent into the town of Winnipeg during the night to find out the actual state of affairs, and brought back news that up to that evening the rebel flag still "waved" over Fort Garry; and though vague rumours were afloat of the force being somewhere in the river, yet these were discredited by Riel, who with a few of his adherents still kept possession of the fort; also that Bishop Taché had arrived that day under a salute of twentyfour guns.

At 8 A.M. on the 24th the troops disembarked at Point Douglas, two miles from the town of Winnipeg, and formed up in open column of companies. The flanking party had brought a few horses and carts, so that there was sufficient trans-

CHAP.

[CHAP.

x1.]

g the roads icquets and than human th cold and d to change n the boats. nen, though ficult to get re-embarked still falling to the town ind out the back news el flag still ough vague g somewhere ted by Riel, s still kept sishop Taché e of twenty-

disembarked the town of column of rought a few fficient transport ready for the ammunition, engineers' tools, and hospital. The guns were limbered up behind a couple of country carts, and a few wretched ponies served to mount Colonel Wolseley and his staff. Covered by Captain Wallace's company in skirmishing order, and with a company behind as a rearguard, the force marched straight on the village of Winnipeg, the roads being ankle deep in thick black mud, and the rain still pouring in torrents.

Passing round the flank of the village, the fort appeared in sight about 700 yards off, across the open prairie. A few stray inhabitants in the village declared that Riel and his party still held possession of the fort and meant to fight. The gates were shut, no flag was flying from the flag-staff, and guns were visible, mounted in the bastions and over the gateway that commanded the approach from the village and the prairie over which the troops were advancing. It certainly looked as if our labours were not to be altogether in vain. "Riel is going to fight!" ran along the line, and the men quickened their pace and strode cheerily forward, regardless of the mud and rain. M. Riel rose in their estimation immensely. The gun over the gateway was expected every moment to open

CHAP.

fire, but we got nearer and nearer and still no sign ; at last we could see that there were no men standing to the guns, and, unless it were a trap to get us close up before they opened fire, it was evident that there would be no fight after all. "By God! he's bolted!" was the cry. Colonel Wolseley sent forward some of his staff to see if the south gate were also shut; they galloped all round the fort, and brought back word that the gate opening on to the bridge over the Assiniboine River was wide open, and men bolting away over the bridge. The troops then marched in by this gateway, and took possession of Fort Garry after a bloodless victory. The Union Jack was hoisted, a royal salute fired, and three cheers given for the Queen, which were caught up and heartily reechoed by a few of the inhabitants . Lo had followed the troops from the village. It was still raining in torrents, and the whole place was one sea of black, slimy mud; the men were drenched to the skin, and had been so during the previous night. Officers and men were therefore temporarily housed inside the fort, instead of pitching tents on the soaking wet ground.

Inside the fort were found several field-guns, some of which were mounted in the bastions and

[CHAP.

x1.]

ill no sign; e no men vere a trap fire, it was t after all. y. Colonel ff to see if galloped all rd that the Assiniboine away over in by this Garry after was hoisted, ven for the heartily rehad followed still raining one sea of ched to the vious night. nrily housed ents on the

field-guns, astions and over the gateway, a large quantity of ammunition, and a number of old-pattern muskets, many of which were loaded and capped, showing that the intention had been up to the last moment to resist the entry of the troops. It is evident that Riel would have fought it out had his men stuck to him: he is reported to have said that very morning, that "it was as well to be shot defending the fort, as to give it up and be hung afterwards." The house that he and his "Secretaries of State" had occupied was found in a state of great confusion; the breakfast things on the table not yet cleared away, documents of all kinds, and the private papers of the ex-President lying about, betokened a hasty retreat. It appeared that Riel had refused to credit the report of the approach of the troops, until he actually saw them marching round the village, and had then hurriedly galloped off about a quarter of an hour before their arrival, taking the road to Pembina accompanied by Lepine and O'Donoghue. These fellows had been living in great luxury; the "Government House" was comfortably furnished with Mr. McDougall's furniture, captured last November; but though living in unaccustomed magnificence, they had not been able to get over their natural habits, and had

198

allowed everything to get into a state of dirt and disorder.

No arrests were made by the military, but many of the inhabitants came forward offering to capture Riel and his gang if authorized to do so. Some of them wanted to be allowed to take him, dead or alive, and in that case would simply have shot him down on the first opportunity, without any parleying at all; but Colonel Wolseley had not been invested with any civil authority, and therefore told them that they must first obtain a legal warrant from a magistrate on sworn information, and that Mr. Donald Smith would then provide the means for executing it. A warrant was subsequently obtained from a justice of the peace for the arrest of Riel, Lepine, and O'Donoghue, on a charge of murder, false imprisonment, and robbery ; but being found to be informal, it was never executed. In fact, there were no constables, and no civil authority until the arrival of the Lieutenant-Governor Designate, Mr. Archibald, pending which Mr. Donald Smith, at the urgent request of Colonel Wolseley, assumed the duties of Governor temporarily.

There is little doubt but that Riel and his two friends might have been easily taken prisoners, had Colonel Wolseley desired to do so, but in his posi-

[CHAP.

I. [CHAP.

x1.]

e of dirt and

ry, but many g to capture so. Some of nim, dead or ave shot him any parleying been invested re told them rrant from a nd that Mr. he means for ntly obtained rrest of Riel. e of murder, ing found to In fact, there rity until the esignate, Mr. Smith, at the assumed the

and his two risoners, had in his posiON TO FORT GARRY.

tion he did not desire to trench on the civil authority, and refused to allow his soldiers to be turned into policemen or constables. The three ringleaders made their escape across the bridge over the river Assiniboine, and then crossing to the right bank of the Red River, galloped up the bank for some distance, when, finding, doubtless to their surprise, that they were not pursued, they halted to rest. Next morning they could not find their horses, which had either been stolen or had strayed over the prairie during the night, so they pursued their journey on foot. After a while they wanted to cross to the left bank of the river to take the regular road to Pembina, but were unable to find a boat. Collecting some logs of wood and rails from the fences, they extemporized a raft, which they lashed together, in default of rope, by their braces and neck-ties, and other portions of their attire, and at last succeeded in getting across. Riel, however, lost one of his boots in the passage, and had to continue his journey barefooted. They had nothing to eat except a few dried suckers (fish), procured from a farm-house; and in this sorry plight, footsore, hungry, and wet, the ex-President and his two confederates reached the United States' territory, a melancholy example of the mutability of human

affairs, and the ups and downs of fortune. Riel seemed to feel acutely the change in his position, and said to a man whom he met travelling to the Settlement, "Tell them that he who ruled in Fort Garry a few days ago is now a houseless wanderer, with nothing to eat but two dried suckers." In Pembina but little notice was taken of the "fallen potentates" by their former friends, and they subsequently separated, Lepine and O'Donoghue remaining on the American side of the line, whilst Riel went to his own home in the little village of St. Joseph's, which is a small hamlet, about thirty miles west of Pembina, and chiefly inhabited by half-breeds: here he was allowed to remain unmolested.

The object of the expedition having been accomplished, Colonel Wolscley began to make preparations for housing the two battalions of Militia, which were to remain in the Settlement, and for the return of the regular troops to Canada. For this purpose he sent Lieutenant-Colonel Bolton to inspect the road to the N.W. angle of the Lake of the Woods, to see whether it was possible to send the troops by that route, and so avoid the excessive labour of taking the boats up the Winnipeg River. Lieut.-Colonel Bolton returned after a week's absence,

200

[CHAP.

[CHAF.

x1.]

rtune. Riel his position, elling to the iled in Fort ss wanderer, ackers." In the "fallen they subsehue remain-, whilst Riel illage of St. about thirty ly inhabited l to remain

been accompreparations ilitia, which and for the and for the For this on to inspect f the Woods, he troops by re labour of ver. Lieut.k's absence, reporting that the last thirty-three miles had not yet been cut out, and that there were such heavy morasses and thick woods that only a small body of men could get through; the idea of sending the whole of the men by that route was therefore abandoned.

By the 27th August the brigades of Militia began to arrive, and on the 29th the first detachment of Regulars started in the boats on their return to Canada vid the Winnipeg River. By the 3rd September the whole of the 60th, with the Royal Artillery and Royal Engineers, had left Fort Garry by boat after a very brief sojourn. Only one company of the 60th, Captain Buller's, was sent by Mr. Snow's road as an experiment. This officer, by dint of much energy and determination, succeeded in getting his men safely through the swamps. Everything had to be carried on pack-horses, which were very lightly laden to enable them to get over the soft spongy muskegs. The company of the 1st Ontario Rifles which had been left as a garrison at Fort Frances, met this company of the 60th at the N.W. angle, and there exchanged boats and pack-horses.

Previous to the departure of the Regulars, Colonel Wolseley issued the following order of the day, con-

СПАР.

#### THE RED RIVER EXPEDITION.

gratulating the troops on the successful issue of their labours :---

### "TO THE REGULAR TROOPS OF THE RED RIVER EXPEDITIONARY FORCE.

"I cannot permit Colonel Feilden and you to start upon your return journey to Canada without thanking you for having enabled me to carry out the Lieutenant-General's orders so successfully.

"You have endured excessive fatigue in the performance of a service that for its arduous nature can bear comparison with any previous military expedition. In coming here from Prince Arthur's Landing you have traversed a distance of upwards of 600 miles.

"Your labours began with those common at the outset of all campaigns,—namely, with road-making and the construction of defensive works; then followed the arduous duty of taking the boats up a height of 800 feet, along fifty miles of river full of rapids, and where portages were numerons. From the time you left Shebandowan Lake until Fort Garry was reached, your labour at the oar has been incessant from daybreak to dark every day. Forty-seven portages were got over, entailing the unparalleled exertion of carrying the boats, guns, ammunition, stores, and provisions, over a total distance of upwards of seven miles. It may be said that the whole journey has been made through a wilderness, where, as there were no supplies of any sort whatever to be had, everything had to be taken with you in the boats.

"I have throughout viewed with pleasure the manner in which officers have vied with their men in carrying heavy loads. I feel proud of being in command of officers who so well know how to set a good example, and of men who evince such eagerness in following it.

"It has rained upon forty-five days out of the ninety-four that have passed by since we landed at Thunder Bay, and upon many occasions every man has been wet through for days together.

"There has not been the slightest murmur of discontent heard from any one.

"It may be confidently asserted that no force has ever had to endure more continuous labour, and it may be as truthfully said that no men on service have ever been better behaved, or more cheerful under the trials arising from exposure to inclement weather, excessive fatigue, and to the annoyance caused by flies.

### [СПАР.

XI.]

ssue of their

### XPEDITIONARY

ipon your return ; enabled me to ly.

ance of a service ith any previous Arthur's Landing

utset of all camcion of defensive the boats up a upids, and where ebandowan Lake as been incessant es were got over, uts, guns, ammuupwards of seven en made through sort whatever to pats.

anner in which y loads. I feel ow how to set a n following it. y-four that have many occasions

itent heard from

er had to endure uid that no men eerful under the xcessive fatigue,

#### ON TO FORT GARRY.

"There has been a total absence of crime amongst you during your advance to Fort Garry, and I feel confident that your conduct during the return journey will be as creditable to you in every respect.

"The leaders of the banditti who recently oppressed Her Majesty's loyal subjects in the Red River Settlement having fied as you advanced on the fort, leaving their guns and a large quantity of their arms and ammunition behind them, the primary object of the expedition has been peaceably accomplished. Although you have not therefore had an opportunity of gaining glory, you can carry back with you into the daily routine of garrison life the conviction that you have done good service to the State, and have proved that no extent of intervening wilderness, no matter how great may be its difficulties, whether by land or water, can enable men to commit murder or to rebel against Her Majesty's authority with impunity.

"G. J. WOLSELEY, Colonel,

Commanding Red River Expedition.

"FORT GARRY, 28th August, 1870."

The above order requires no comment, and shows in what light the performances of the troops were regarded by their commander.

The two battalions of Militia destined for the garrison of the Red River Settlement, were quartered, one at Fort Garry, the other at the Stone Fort, and all arrangements for their accommodation were personally seen to in detail by Colonel Wolseley himself before his departure. The Lieutenant-Governor, Mr. Archibald, arrived, *via* the Winnipeg River, on the 2nd September, and was duly installed amidst general approbation on the 6th. Colonel Wolseley, having accomplished his work,

CHAP.

handed over the command of the garrison to Lieutenant-Colonel S. P. Jarvis, of the 1st Ontario Rifles, issuing a complimentary farewell order to the Militia similar to that addressed to the regular troops, and left Fort Garry on the morning of the 10th September by the road to the N.W. angle of Lake of the Woods, accompanied by Mr. Irvine. Lieutenant-Colonel Bolton and a small party had started two days before by the same road, and Lieutenant-Colonel McNeill, V.C., had previously taken his departure on board the little steamer International, to return to Canada, via the United States, so that in an incredibly short space of time, seventeen days from the arrival of the force, everything had been quietly and peaceably arranged, the Governor installed, the garrison settled down to its winter quarters, and the Regulars dispatched on their return journey to Canada.

It is not necessary to dwell upon the difficulties encountered on the return; the same number of portages had to be got over, the same number of miles to be traversed, the only difference being that the rapids of the Winnipeg and Sturgeon rivers had to be painfully and laboriously ascended by poling and tracking, instead of being swiftly run. The troops, however, had a less quantity of

garrison to e 1st Ontario l order to the the regular morning of e N.W. angle Mr. Irvine. ll party had e road, and d previously ittle steamer a the United space of time, force, everyarranged, the led down to s dispatched

τ.

CHAP.

ne difficulties e number of e number of erence being nd Sturgeon isly ascended eing swiftly quantity of stores to carry over the portages, and the guns, ammunition, &c. had been left in Fort Garry; besides, they were up to their work and had the satisfaction of feeling that each mile they passed. brought them nearer to their rest. By the first week in October they had all reached Prince Arthur's Landing, and as fast as they arrived were conveyed in the steamships *Chicora* and *Algoma* to Collingwood, and thence by train to Toronto and Montreal. I cannot conclude this chapter better than by quoting the General Order which was subsequently issued to the troops by His Royal Highness the Field-Marshal Commandingin-Chief:—

"I. The Expedition to the Red River having completed the service on which it has been employed, His Royal Highness the Field-Marshal Commauding-in-Chief desires to express to Lieutenant-General the Honourable James Lindsay, who organized the Force, and to Colonel Wolseley and the officers, non-commissioned officers, and men who composed it, his entire satisfaction at the manner in which they have performed the arduons duties which were entailed upon them by a journey of above 600 miles through a country destitute of supplies, and which necessitated the heavy labour of carrying boats, guns, ammunition, stores, and provisions, over no less than forty-seven 'portages.'

"II. Seldom have troops been called upon to endure more continuous labour and fatigue, and never have officers and men behaved better or worked more cheerfully during inclement weather and its consequent hardships, and the successful result of the Expedition shows the perfect discipline and spirit of all engaged in it.

x1.]

"III. His Royal Highness, while thanking the Regular Troops for their exertions, wishes especially to place on record his full approciation of the services rendered by the Militia of the Dominion of Canada, who were associated with them throughout these trying duties.

(Signed)

"R. AIREY, Adjutant-General.

CHAP. XI.

"HORSE GUARDS, November 1870."

[CHAP. XI.

gular Troops for his full apprene Dominion of at these trying

"R. AIREY, jutant-General.

# CHAPTER XII.

### THE RED RIVER SETTLEMENT.

Our first impressions of the new province of Manitoba were not very favourable. Drenched with rain and up to the ankles in mud, it was scarcely to be expected that we should look with pleased eyes on the level country spread out before us, covered with water like a vast swamp. But a sojourn of a fortnight removed these unfavourable impressions.

Fort Garry, which is simply a post of the Hudson's Bay Company, is a collection of brick and wooden buildings surrounded by a wall about ten feet high. The original fort was built in 1840, and was then nearly square, 100 yards long by 85 wide, with a stone wall and circular stone bastions at the angles. About the year 1850, a second portion was added to it, of the same size as the original; but the stone wall was not carried all round, the

208

CHAP.

new portion being enclosed by a high wooden palisading on a stone foundation. This and the original stone wall are loopholed for musketry, and a wooden banquette runs round it to enable the defenders to fire from the loopholes. The bastions are also pierced for guns. The place is capable of being successfully defended against attacks of Indians or any enemy not provided with artillery; but even our small 7-pounder mountain guns would soon have made a breach in the wooden palisading, and a few shells would have quickly set the buildings inside in a blaze. The fort is crowded with buildings, which are used as stores and offices of the Hudson's Bay Company. It stands at the angle formed by the junction of the Assiniboine and Red rivers, which have here a width of about 160 feet and 500 feet respectively, and fronts on to the left bank of the Assiniboine, from which it is about 70 yards distant. Over this river there is a floating bridge, while the Red River is crossed by a scow ferry boat. The site is very pretty and commands a beautiful view of the prairie on all sides. To the north, about 700 yards off, is the town of Winnipeg, a collection of about 100 houses built at all angles to each other without any regard to symmetry. There are a few "general stores," a fair hotel,

### THE RED RIVER SETTLEMENT.

CHAP.

X11.]

h wooden s and the ketry, and enable the e bastions is capable attacks of h artillery; guns would palisading, the buildwded with d offices of at the angle ne and Red ut 160 feet on to the it is about is a floating by a scow commands To the es. of Winnibuilt at all symmetry. fair hotel,

a photographic establishment, and a newspaper press; but of tradesmen and skilled mechanics there is a great dearth : all such would find a good opening in Winnipeg, especially tailors, bootmakers, blacksmiths, bricklayers, carpenters, &c. Prices of all goods are very high, for though there is no import duty, yet freights are high in consequence of the long distances separating the settlement from the nearest railway. At present, the line is only open for a short distance beyond St. Paul's in Minnesota, but is rapidly being prosecuted northwards; a line from Duluth and the cities on the south shore of Lake Superior is also projected as far as Pembina, to which point it will be easy to run a line over the level prairie from Fort Garry, and thus bring the settlement into direct communication with the United States and Canada. -Atpresent, goods have to be carted from St. Paul's to Frog Point, where they are taken down the Red River by water during the summer months. The Hudson's Bay Company run a small steamer, called the International, a flat-bottomed propeller, drawing about two feet of water, but very long, too long for the sharp turns and twicts of the Red River; in the spring or when the water is high, she can ascend as far as "Fort Abereromby,"

seventy miles above Freg Point, and about 130 below St. Cloud.

CHAP.

C

ð

But as long as the only communication to the North-West Territory is through American soil, such a fact must tend greatly to Americanize the people, and if Canada desires to maintain her hold on this distant province, it is absolutely indispensable that she should construct a railway entirely within her own boundaries and be independent of her powerful neighbour. Such a line would probably run from Ottawa through the Lake Nipegon district north of Lake Superior to Lake Winnipeg, and would form the first portion of the future Pacific line to British Columbia. The Canadian Government appears to be alive to the importance of this, and sent out surveying parties during last summer in the direction of Lake Nipegon to find the best line for a railway. When once constructed as far as the valley of Lake Winnipeg, its future extension over the level prairie land for 1,200 miles to Edmonton House, and across the Rocky Mountains to British Columbia, becomes a mere question of time.

The present idea of making the route followed by the Expeditionary Force the regular highway for emigration from Canada to Manitoba seems to be impracticable, for though Mr. Dawson proposes

### THE RED RIVER SETTLEMENT.

211

[CHAP.

xn.]

about 130

tion to the in soil, such the people, old on this insable that within her er powerful y run from iet north of would form e to British appears to nd sent out n the direct line for a far as the tension over o Edmonton s to British me.

hte followed ar highway ba seems to on proposes to lessen the number of portages by building dams between some of the lakes, and talks of placing small steamers on Rainy Lake and Lake of the Woods, yet even then, the time which would be occupied in the transit, the expense attending it, and the total absence of supplies along the whole line, would be fatal objections. I should be sorry to form one of a party of emigrants struggling over those portages and through that barren and inhospitable region with their wives and families! The Indian question would also have to be settled before any emigrants could pass through-and if something is not done next spring to settle their claims, they will undoubtedly oppose the passage of any such parties. For the present, therefore, all emigration must take place through the United States, a long and roundabout road, and an expensive one.

Another unfortunate circumstance tending to throw obstacles in the way of the settler, is the unhappy reservation in the Manitoba Bill (*vide* Appendix C) of so large an extent of land, 1,400,000 acres, for the purpose of extinguishing the claims of the families of half-breed residents. Until this reservation is actually portioned off, no emigrant can acquire a title to land, or can venture to settle himself on a

212

CHAP.

C

1

ť

r

plot of ground, lest he should be turned out of it to make way for a half-breed claimant. Mr. Archibald surely has a hard task before him to portion out this land in such a way as to interfere as little as possible with emigration, in which of course lies the future hope of the country. That he will successfully do so, and that the country will eventually get the better of the toils that have been hrown around its young limbs by the short-sighted policy of Sir George Cartier, there is no doubt. The improvident half-breed, averse to steady toil, and devoted to a wild life of freedom on the plains, will soon dispose of his reservation of land to some canny Scotch or English settler. It is probable that a large portion of it will eventually fall into the hands of the Roman Catholic Church, which will thereby acquire in Manitoba, as it has already done in Quebec and Montreal, an undue preponderance of wealth and power. But the natural fertility of the soil and its advantages as an agricultural and grazing country must sooner or later triumph over the puny efforts of Bishop Taché and his party to check its growth and preserve the predominance of their nationality. The tide of emigration pouring in from Ontario, and I trust also from the British Isles, will soon sweep away the landmarks he has

#### THE RED RIVER SETTLEMENT.

[сплр,

хu.]

ed out of it Mr. Archito portion nterfere as ch of course 'hat he will will evenhave been hort-sighted no doubt. steady toil, 1 the plains, und to some is probable lly fall into , which will lready done eponderance l fertility of ultural and riumph over his party to ominance of ion pouring the British arks he has

tried to raise, and leave the French element in a hopeless minority. The efforts of that far-sighted prelate have been directed to building up in the north-west a thoroughly French province, which would counteract by its influence the growing pre-



MONSEIGNEUR TACHE, EISHOP OF ST. BONIFACE.

ponderance of Ontario, and preserve the "balance of power" in the Parliament of Canada. So far he has succeeded, and by the establishment of the French language on an equality with the English, throughout the new province, as well as by this reservation of land, he has done much to retard the

214

### THE RED RIVER EXPEDITION.

growth of the country. At one of his interviews with Colonel Wolseley he could not help expressing his real feelings on this subject. "Ah!" said he, "how happy we were here in 'notre chère Rivière Rouge,' a quiet, contented, primitive people, far from the world and its troubles." And such he would have wished it to remain. In a pamphlet on the North-West Territory, published at Montreal in 1868, he dwells forcibly on the long and rigorous winter and the inaccessible nature of the country, and draws by no means an inviting picture of what is in reality one of the finest fields for emigration in the world. It is perhaps scarcely to be wondered at, that he, in common with the Roman Catholic clergy, should have viewed with regret and dismay the coming change, which threatens to deprive him of much of his influence in the settlement, over which he had previously ruled as a king.

That the Roman Catholic Clergy were at the bottom of the insurrection, nay, that they were its prime instigators and promoters, can be proved beyond question. Two of them in particular, Fathers Lestanc and Richot, made themselves most conspicuous. At the time the *émeute* broke out, Bishop Taché was in Rome attending the Ecumenical Council, but he had left Père Lestanc as

CHAP.

[CHAP.

xn.]

interviews expressing !" said he, ière Rivière ole, far from h he would hlet on the eal in 1868, rous winter ountry, and e of what is nigration in e wondered an Catholic and dismay deprive him ement, over

were at the hey were its be proved particular, uselves most broke out, g the Œcu-Lestanc as his vicar during his absence. This man, a Frenchman pur sang, is a man of great ability and determination. His personal appearance reminds one unpleasantly of the pictures of the Spanish Inquisitors, a stern, ascetic countenance, as of one who, had he lived in the days of the Inquisition, would have revelled in the horrors of the tortureroom, and smiled at the shricks of an auto-da-fé. His influence amongst the French half-breeds was very great; it was he who pulled the strings of the puppets, and directed the course of events after the first overt acts of rebellion. I have been told on good authority that he was actually present at the murder of Scott, which he openly abetted, and told the firing party that they were doing a righteous action, and were perfectly justified in obeying the orders they had received to shoot Scott.

Père Richot, on the other hand, is a great contrast to Lestane. He is a big, blustering fanatic, a man of no great individual ability, a mere tool of Lestanc's, but a dangerous instrument in the hands of such an unscrupulous spirit. He is the Curé of St. Norbert, the parish where the first meetings of the disaffected took place, many of whom he lodged in his house whilst the barricade thrown across the road to Pembina to prevent

Mr. McDougall's entry was being maintained. Throughout the movement he was a warm adherent of Riel, and was one of the three delegates sent to Ottowa by the Provisional Government. This man had the impertinence to call upon Colonel Wolseley just before Mr. Archibald's arrival, and it was perhaps in disgust at the very cool reception he met with from that officer that he announced to his congregation on the following Sunday from the pulpit, that "as no Civil Government had yet been established, they were perfectly at liberty to form another Provisional Government, and would be justified in doing so," and also deelared that "the militia had been sent there to upset their religion."

But though Monseigneur Taché was not present at Red River when the rising actually took place, and though he was telegraphed for and brought back from Rome at the public expense, and earnestly besought by a confiding Government to allay the spirit of disaffection in the North-West, yet it is difficult to believe, in the face of positive evidence to the contrary, that he was not aware of everything that was going on; it is, I repeat, hard to believe that men who, like the Roman Catholic elergy, are under such strict discipline, should have ventured openly to foment an insurrection of this

naintained. n adherent egates sent nent. This on Colonel rrival, and ol reception nounced to y from the ad yet been ty to form would be that "the ir religion." not present took place, nd brought d earnestly o allay the t, yet it is ve evidence e of everyat, hard to n Catholic hould have ion of this description contrary to their Bishop's wishes or unknown to him. Is it likely that Père Lestanc, the confidential friend of the Bishop, selected by him as his vicar to manage the affairs of the diocese during his absence, would have dared to take upon himself such a grave responsibility? As it happens, we have direct evidence in the Bishop's own handwriting, proving on what terms of familiarity he was with Riel and O'Donoghue, and letters of his are extant which speak of the cause they all had at heart, and the support which their powerful friend at Ottawa (Sir G. Cartier) would continue to give them. Amongst the private papers of Riel, left lying about in confusion in his room, three letters from Bishop Taché to the President fell into my hands, seriously compromising himself and Sir George Cartier. The most important of these letters was subsequently lost in a most mysterious manner, before any copy had been taken of it, but the others, as also one from Lestanc, are still in my possession, and I give one of them in extenso as a sample :---

" HAMILTON, 24° Juillet, 1870.

"M. LS. RIEL, PRÉSIDENT.

" MONSIEUR LE PRÉSIDENT,

"J'ai eu une entrevue hier avec le Gouverneur Général à Niagara ; il m'a dit que le Concil ne pourrait pas revenir sur la décision prise d'envoyer

[CHAP.

**х**н.]

Mr. Archibald par les Possessions Britanniques, et ce, pour des raisons, très bonnes, qu'il m'a expliquées et que je vous communiquerai plus tard. Nous ne pouvons donc pas arriver ensemble comme je l'avais espéré. Je ne scrai pas seul, car j'aurai avec moi des gens qui viennent pour nous aider. Mr. Archibald regrette de ne pouvoir pas arriver par Pembina : il désire pourtant arriver au milieu de nous, et ce, avant les troupes ; c'est pourquoi il serait bien content s'il y avait moyen de lui trouver un chemin soit par la Pointe de Chênes soit par le Lac des Roseaux, aussi je vous prie de faire faire des recherches à cet égard, afin d'obtenir le résultat que nous nous étions proposé. Il faut qu'il arrive parmi et par nos gens. Je suis très content de ce Mr. Archibald, je crois vraiment que c'est l'homme qu'il nous faut ; déjà, il parait comprendre très bien là position et la condition de notre chère Rivière Rouge, et semble en aimer le peuple : ayons donc confiance que le bon Dieu nous a bien servi malgré notre indiguité. Soyez sans inquiétude ; le temps et la confiance nous apporteront ce que nous désirons tous<sup>1</sup> et qu'il est pourtant comme impossible de mentionner vu l'excitation de certains esprits. . . . Les fureurs du mois d'Avril nous ont préparé les grâces du mois de Mai ; soyons persuadés que les petites rages du mois de Juillet preparent le triomphe du mois d'Août. Nous avons des amis sincères, devonés et puissants.<sup>2</sup> Je pense partir de Montréal le 8 du mois d'Août, en sorte qu'il est probable que j'arriverai vers le 22 du même mois. La lettre que j'ai apportée a été envoyée en Angleterre ainsi que celles que j'ai écrites moi-même et que je vous ai lues. Les gens de Toronto ont voulu faire une démonstration contre l'amnistie, ct malgré le puf des journaux ils n'ont jamais osé donner le chiffre insignifiant des personnes presentes. Quelques individus ont voulu en parler ici à Hamilton, mais les journaux ont empêché cet effort de zèle que tous les gens sensés désapprouvent ouvertement. Je suis ici par hasard et retenu parceque c'est dimanche. Mes saluts à Mr. O.3 et autres du Fort. Priez bien pour moi, je ne vous oublie pas.

> " Votre pauvre Evêque et aussi je . . . . " Votre meilleur ami, " Alx. Ev. de St. Boniface."

The italics are the Bishop's, and the tone of the letter speaks for itself, and ought to convince the

218

CHAP.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> That is to say, the much-desired amnesty. <sup>2</sup> Sir G. E. Cartier (?). <sup>3</sup> O'Donoghue (?).

des raisons, trea plus tard. Nons s espéré. Je ne pour nous aider. mbina : il désire s ; c'est pourquoi chemin soit par je vous prie de ésultat que nons os gens. Je suis e e'est l'homme osition et la conle peuple : ayons é notre indignité. eront ce que nous le mentionner vu d'Avril nous ont e les petites rages ût. Nous avons ir de Montréal le erai vers le 22 du Angleterre ainsi es. Les gens de stie, et malgré le ignifiant des perr ici à Hamilton, s les gens sensés retenu parceque Priez bien pour

T. BONIFACE."

. .

tone of the onvince the

u (?).

most sceptical of the real connection between the Bishop and the "President." The attempt to induce Mr. Archibald to enter the settlement under his, Bishop Taché's, auspices was a bold effort to retain the reins of power in his own hands, and make the new Governor rule through the French party. Fortunately for the peace of the settlement, this plan failed. Mr. Archibald made his entry by the Winnipeg River, alone, in his own canoe, although Bishop Taché had sent horses to meet him at the north-west angle of the Lake of the Woods; and thus avoided giving offence to the loyal section of the people, as he undoubtedly would have done had he been introduced by the French party.

The population of the province of Manitoba, exclusive of Indians, may be roughly taken as about 15,000. Of these the greater portion are halfbreeds, whether descended from French, Scotch, English, or Irish parents. The French half-breeds are by far the most numerous, and the French language, or a patois of it, is mostly spoken throughout the Territory. The half-breed is *the* inhabitant of Red River; he does the work of the country, and is to be seen everywhere, in the settlements, on the rivers, on the prairie—in fact, he is ubiquitous. According to the amount of European or Indian

219

[СПАР.

XIL]

CHAP.

blood in their yeins, the half-breeds differ from one another much in the same way as a quadroon in the south differs from a full-blooded negro. From the civilized half-breed farmer, who prides himself in copying the manners and customs of his white ancestors, and lives on his little estate in comfort and affluence, to the semi-savage half-breed hunter of the plains, but little, if at all superior to the fullblooded Indian, who scorns the restraints of civilization, and revels in the freedom of a wild life on the boundless prairie, the difference is very great, though both are included in the generic term "halfbreed." This term, which grates rather unpleasantly on European ears, is not considered as by any means a term of reproach. The half-breed is proud of his mixed descent, in many cases prouder of his Indian blood than of its white admixture. An excellent horseman, a good shot, with an eye like a hawk, and the keen, unerring instinct of his mother's race, added to considerable muscular strength and a supple elastic frame capable of enduring severe and continuous fatigue, the half-breed is the great hunter and trapper of the prairies, the guide to whose semi-savage instincts the white man has to trust himself, and who seldom betrays confidence reposed in him. In the settlements he may be

CHAP.

xn.1

fer from one droon in the From the s himself in f his white e in comfort oreed hunter r to the fullnts of civiliwild life on very great, term "halfunpleasantly y any means proud of his f his Indian n excellent like a hawk, other's race, ngth and a r severe and the great e guide to man has to confidence he may be

seen loafing about the whiskey saloons, clad in a long blue cloth capote with brass buttons, purchased from the company's stores; but when hunting on the plains he discards the capote in favour of a leather shirt with deer-skin mocassins and leggings, tastefully embroidered with many coloured beads and porcupine quills. Though given to the curse of strong drink when in the settlements, that curse of "whiskey" which seems to overshadow the land and is rapidly exterminating the aboriginal red-skin, yet when he is "en voyage," the half-breed will abstain for weeks and months from the accursed "fire-water," only alas! to break out into frightful excesses when he gets back to the temptations of the whiskey saloon. This trait of character is happily illustrated in the "North-West Passage by Land," in the description of "La Ronde," the hunter who accompanied Lord Milton and Dr. Cheadle in their journey across the Rocky Mountains. He is a very favourable specimen of the French half-breed, and lives in a pretty little cottage about a mile from Fort Garry. When taxed with his devotion to the bottle, he replied-"Je ne bois pas souvent ; mais quand je bois, je bois-c'est ma façon, voyez-vous ;" and he was right ; when they drink they do drink with a will. In the town of

CHAP.

Winnipeg every other house seems to be a whiskey shop, and for the first two or three days after our arrival the place seemed turned into a very Pandemonium—Indians, half-breeds, and whites in all stages of intoxication, fighting and quarrelling in the streets with drawn knives, and lying prostrate on the prairie in all directions, like the killed and wounded after a sharp skirmish. Fortunately, the stock of whiskey was limited, and was quickly consumed, so that these drunken orgies soon came to a natural end.

With the exception of the little village of Winnipeg, the farm-houses of the settlers are not built on the prairie, but follow the line of the rivers. From White Horse Plains, some sixty or seventy miles up the Assiniboine River, down to Fort Garry, thence along the banks of Red River to the Indian settlement, about eight or ten miles from Lake Winnipeg, and also up the Red River for a few miles *above* Fort Garry, these houses are dotted along the banks more or less thickly. No "locations" have as yet been taken up at a distance from the river, principally because there has been no necessity to do so, and men naturally preferred a river frontage if they could get it. The difficulty of getting water seems also to have operated against interior

[CHAP.

XII.]

e a whiskey ys after our very Panhites in all arrelling in ng prostrate killed and unately, the vas quickly is soon came

age of Winre not built the rivers. or seventy Fort Garry, the Indian from Lake for a few are dotted "locations" ce from the no necessity river frony of getting nst interior settlement: they say, that although water is found at a depth of thirty or forty feet, it is generally brackish; but this difficulty will probably vanish when put to the test of experience.

The prairie roads are good. From Fort Garry to the Indian settlement thirty miles down the Red River, there is a good road over the prairie called "the King's road;" it runs nearly straight, not following the sinuosities of the river, but meeting it at some points, and at others being a mile or more from it. At such places there is an inner road along the bank of the river. I was much struck on one occasion when riding down to the Indian settlement with the comfortable wellto-do appearance of the people, and their neat houses and farms. The fences are made of poplar poles piled on each other between two uprights, not a bit like the zigzag "snake fences" of Canada; and the houses are mostly frame-houses neatly whitewashed. For the first twelve miles the road passes over the open prairie; then the country gradually becomes wooded, with small clumps of poplar, sometimes fenced round like a young plantation in England. These little patches become thicker and more frequent, till at last the road becomes a single track through the wood, with open spots

[CHAP.

s

P t

a

here and there, instead of, as before, a number of tracks side by side, equally good and open to the selection of the traveller. In this prairie country you can drive a horse and waggon anywhere : there are no fences to stop you, and no notices of "proseeution for trespass." There is an inexpressible charm in the freedom of the "boundless prairie"; you feel as if you could go anywhere; there is an exhilarating feeling in the pure bracing air, which seems to clear the brain, to lengthen the vision, and to free you from the trammels of ordinary existence. No wonder it has produced so fine and handsome a race of men as are the half-breeds. I passed several of them on the road, some mounted, some on foot. Each man had his long rifle over his shoulder and his powder-horn by his side, just like the warlike Rajpoots of Central India, upright, fine-looking fellows, with a certain air of freedom and nobility about them, looking you straight in the face, and touching their caps or nodding in token of respect or salutation.

What a future must surely be in store for this magnificent country, destined to be the granary of the Old World, and the birthplace of millions of free men ! Gazing on the fertile prairie spread out before the eye, smooth and level as a billiard table,

[CHAP.

XII.

number of open to the irie country here: there s of "prosessible charm e"; you feel s an exhilawhich seems sion, and to y existence. handsome a ussed several me on foot. houlder and the warlike fine-looking and nobility e face, and n of respect

ore for this e granary of millions of e spread out illiard table, and stretching away to the west, to the west, for hundreds of miles, lacking nothing but the toil of the husbandman to convert it into fields rich with yellow waving corn, one can fancy the future inhabitant of the soil looking proudly out on his rich inheritance, and exclaiming, with a slight adaptation of Byron's well-known lines—

> "O'er the rich acres of our vast prairie, Our hopes as boundless and our souls as free, Far as the heart can wish, the fancy roam, Survey our empire and behold our home."

At present the cultivation of the soil is carried on in a primitive fashion. Each settler owns about fifteen or twenty head of cattle, which he turns out to feed in the open prairie : hay for the winter is cut anywhere, provided it be upwards of two miles from the river, that distance having been reserved by a local law. Grass of the most excellent quality is to be had for the cutting; milk, butter, and eggs are abundant and good; and the soil is so rich that very little farming is required to produce a fine crop. The farmer takes but little trouble with his fields, never puts manure on them, and, having no market for his surplus produce, only cultivates enough land to feed himself and his family. But as the country becomes more populous

CHAP.

and towns and villages spring up, the people will acquire a market of their own; and when the connection with Canada and the United States by railroads is fully developed, they should be able to compete successfully in the markets of the world. The opening up of those fertile regions ought to give a great impetus to emigration, as it will enable the emigrant from the British Isles to retain his allegiance to the old flag, whilst working out for hims if a competence in the far West by honest The chief obstacle to emigration to Canada toil. from England has been the fact of the country being covered with a dense forest, requiring great labour at the outset to clear a plot for cultivation, and labour of the severest kind, to which the immigrant is probably but little accustomed. But in Manitoba there is no such difficulty. There is the land, as fertile as any in the world, and much more so than in many parts of Canada, ready waiting The husbandman has nothing to for the plough. do but commence his ploughing and sowing at once. Every inducement to emigrants, and every help to reach the country, will no doubt be freely given by the Canadian Government, and the tide of emigration now flowing so largely to the United States, and annually converting thousands of British

people will l when the ed States by uld be able of the world. ns ought to t will enable o retain his king out for st by honest n to Canada the country uiring great r cultivation, ch the immined. But in There is the d much more eady waiting s nothing to wing at once. every help to freely given the tide of the United nds of British

ГСПАР.

XII.]

subjects into citizens of a State with which England may be at war to-morrow, will be turned into a new channel, to irrigate the fertile prairies of the North-West with a living stream of happy and contented people, and to make of United Canada a powerful and prosperous nation. May this dream be realized! Should one single intending emigrant be induced by these words of mine to select Manitoba for his future home, then I shall not have written in vain, and he will never regret it.

But, as I would not wish to draw a picture of unsullied brightness, or intentionally deceive the reader into the belief that everything is "couleur de rose," I must put in the dark shadows as well, and not forget to mention the "grasshoppers" which occasionally visit the settlement, and, like the locusts in the land of Egypt, "eat every herb of the land, and all the fruit of the trees." These grasshoppers are about an inch long, of a greenishyellow colour. They come about the middle of July or beginning of August. Their flight is from south-west to north-east, in dense clouds, "so that the land is darkened" with them. Wherever they alight they make a desert, eating up every blade of corn and grass, and stripping the trees of their leaves. Two or three days after their arrival, the

female lays her eggs, which she does by digging a small hole in the ground, in which she immerses about half her body. The eggs are covered with a kind of waterproof bag, which preserves them until the following spring: then, about the first week in May (no matter how severe or how long may have been the winter's frost), the young grubs make their appearance, and do as much or more harm than the grasshoppers themselves, eating up every green thing in the fields and gardens. Each insect will lay about five hundred eggs.

[СПАР.

In the summer of 1868, the grasshoppers came in such countless myriads that they were lying piled up against the angles of the bastions and walls of Fort Garry to a depth of three feet. The stench from their dead bodies was almost insupportable, and they had to be *carted* away and thrown into the river. Nothing will arrest their flight or turn it off in another direction. Huge bonfires and columns of dense smoke have been tried in vain, and the unhappy farmer can do nothing but resign himself to his fate, and behold with what philosophy he may the destruction of his crops. Happily, this dreadful plague seems to recur less frequently than in former years, and with less severity. Last year, 1870, the grasshoppers came

[спар.

X11.]

y digging a c immerses overed with erves them at the first or how long young grubs ch or more s, cating up lens. Each

pers came in lying piled and walls of The stench supportable, thrown into ght or turn ponfires and ded in vain, g but resign what philorops. Haprecur less l with less oppers came

very late in the season, and did only partial harm in the upper parts of the settlement, so that this year crops may be sown without so much fear. It is a curious fact, which I have never heard explained, that as the waste lands become reclaimed and cultivated the visits of the grasshoppers gradually In Minnesota, they are not nearly so bad cease. as they were a few years ago, and in Illinois and Iowa, which were formerly subject to their ravages, they are now almost unknown. It is therefore fair to hope that as the North-West Territory is brought more and more under cultivation, and becomes more settled, this terrible plague will disappear altogether.

The thick woods and swamps which fringe the western margin of Lake of the Woods, terminate very abruptly about thirty miles east of Fort Garry, and the open prairie country commences in a very clearly-defined line, and stretches away to the westward, with searce any intermission for 1,200 miles, right up to the Rocky Mountains. Much of this is unfit for cultivation, but a large proportion, called "The Fertile Belt," and comprising many millions of acres, consists of as rich and fertile land as is to be found anywhere in the world. Herds of moose and cariboo inhabit the woods east of Fort Garry,

and in the open country prairie-chicken are abundant. It seems surprising that these birds should be able to stand the severe and long-continued winter, which is of about the same duration as that of Lower Canada; but as the depth of snow rarely exceeds two feet, they are enabled to feed on the red berries or seeds of the wild rose, which grows in great luxuriance all over the prairie, and is seldom entirely hidden by the snow.

CHAP.

Buffalo are no longer found nearer than 300 miles west of Fort Garry, and are gradually being driven further and further west by the advancing stream of white civilization ; so that the day is, I fear, not far distant when these noble animals, like the deinotherium and mastedon of former epochs, will become extinct, or only known to future generations by a few specimens that may survive in our zoological collections. For a couple of months' shooting trip in Il of the year, Fort Garry would make a good th stal ing-point; guides and hunters, and other necessames for a prairie life could be procured there. А large spring waggon, drawn by two horses, would be large enough for a party of four (including two guides), and would contain all their impedimenta, which ought to consist simply of blankets, a change of clothes, and lots of ammunition. Very little pro-

[СПАР.

XII.]

are abunds should be ued winter, at of Lower exceeds two l berries or great luxuom entirely

n 300 miles eing driven g stream of fear, not far the deinowill become itions by a zoological ting trip in ake a good other necesthere. Α ses, would uding two pedimenta, s, a change little pro-

visions would need to be taken, only some flour and groceries, and a little pemmican. The shot gun would supply ample food in the shape of prairiechicken and wild fowl of all descriptions, until the buffalo country was reached. Two spare horses should certainly be taken for running the buffalo. The whole party might sleep in the waggon during wet weather, under a white canvas covering, stretched over the waggon on hoops, as is done by parties of emigrants; or, better still, if a light tent were taken, made of grass-cloth, weighing only twenty pounds, and large enough to accommodate four men, it would render the sportsmen more independent. For battery, I should recommend a double-barrelled shot gun for small game, and for the buffalo one of Westley Richards' breech-loading carbines, very similar to the Martini pattern, and the hardest-hitting and quickest-loading weapon yet invented, as I can testify from personal experience. I can scarcely fancy anything more enjoyable than a trip such as I have briefly sketched.

About twenty miles below Fort Garry is another post of the Hudson's Bay Company, called "Lower Fort Garry," or the "Stone Fort." It is a large oblong affair, surrounded by a high stone wall, with

rcund towers or bastions at the angles, and is a place of some strength. It stands on the left bank of the river, which is here about eighty yards wide, and flows between high precipitous banks. During the recent disturbances, the residents in the neighbourhood, being principally of English descent, were loyal to the British Crown, and Riel dared not show himself amongst them. Colonel Dennis held possession of the Stone Fort for some time, with a garrison of fifty of the loyal Indians from the Indian village, ten miles further down the river. These Indians belong to the tribe of Saulteux or Swampies, and are generally called "The Swampy Indians." They have been converted to Christianity, and profess the Protestant faith, though speaking no language but their own, the Chippewa. Their pastor is the Reverend Mr. Cochrane, one of themselves, a fullblooded Indian, but a most intelligent, well-read His pretty little church, and neat white man. parsonage-house and school adjoining, stand on the right bank, at a bend of the river, and are almost the first buildings that catch the eye when ascending the river, and form a pleasing contrast after the wild and ever-changing scenery of the Winnipeg River. The Swampies and their chief, Henry Prince, remained thoroughly loyal during the dis-

CHAP.

nd is a place bank of the ls wide, and During the e neighbournt, were loyal ot show himpossession of rison of fifty village, ten dians belong nd are gene-

[СПАГ.

x11.]

They have profess the anguage but ustor is the elves, a fullit, well-read neat white g, stand on er, and are e eye when ing contrast of the Winhief, Henry ing the disturbances, and refused to have anything to do with Riel, although their loyalty was severely tried by the machinations of Riel's Indian agent, a man named James McKay, who was sent down to This James seduce them from their allegiance. McKay was a man of the most elastic political faith, and, after working for Riel, and trying to embroil the country in the horrors of an Indian war, he turned very loyal on the approach of the troops, and like other renegades received his recompense by being taken into Government pay, and employed to make the road to the north-west angle of Lake of the Woods. This mode of rewarding rebellion has several high precedents in Canada to recommend it, and, indeed, is not unknown in other countries, much on the same principle on which an incorrigible poacher is frequently converted into a good gamekeeper. Verily, they have their reward!

The Red River Settlement boasts of a Protestant as well as a Roman Catholic Bishopric. The latter has its head-quarters in the parish of St. Boniface, just opposite Fort Garry, on the other side of the river, where a cathedral, a school, and a nunnery alongside the Bishop's palace present quite an imposing appearance. The Protestant cathedral or

church is a few miles down the river, and the diocese is under the charge of Bishop Macrae, to whose good sense and prudent counsels the people of Red River owe a debt of gratitude, as he was mainly instrumental in preventing the outbreak of civil strife and in smoothing down the animosities of race and religion. To him, and also more especially to the Rev. Mr. Gardiner, the Presbyterian clergyman, the successful descent of the Winnipeg River by the boats of the Expedition is greatly due; for, as has been mentioned in a previous chapter, it was through their exertions that six large Hudson's Bay boats and a number of skilled boatmen, acquainted with the rapids of the Winnipeg River, were despatched to Rat Portage and aided materially in bringing the troops down without accident. To defray the expenses of this undertaking, Bishop Maerae, Archdeaeon McLean, and Mr. Gardiner contributed liberally from their private funds, the last-named gentleman himself accompanying the little expedition. Honour to whom Let not their patriotism and energy be honour! forgotten by the people of Winnipeg.

The new Governor of Manitoba, the Honourable A. G. Archibald, is a native of Nova Scotia, where he filled several high offices previous to the con-

234

[CHAP.

er, and the Macrae, to s the people , as he was outbreak of animositics more espe-Presbyterian e Winnipeg greatly due ; us chapter, six large killed boate Winnipeg and aided vn without this undercLean, and ieir private elf accomto whom energy be

Honourable otia, where o the con-

federation of the British North American Provinces in 1867. Being a Confederate, he lost his seat during the violent storm raised against the Union by the Antis, but was subsequently re-elected when the agitation began to subside. Personally he is a fine, handsome, benevolent-looking man of forty-five or fifty, a clever lawyer, and agreeable, gentlemanly, and well read. The liberal and enlightened policy which he has inaugurated, bodes well for the future of the great country committed to his care. He showed his appreciation of the work done by the Expedition, by writing a highly-complimentary letter to Colonel Wolseley from the Indian Settlement, before even he had reached Fort Garry. As this letter is not long, I must be excused for quoting it in full:---

> "INDIAN MISSION, RED RIVER, Sept. 2nd, 1870.

"DEAR COLONEL WOLSELEY,

"I take the earliest opportunity in my power to congratulate you on the magnificent success of the Expedition under your command. I can judge of the work you have had to do all the better from having seen for myself the physical obstacles that had to be met and overcome ; obstacles which, I assure you, exceeded anything I could have imagined. It is impossible not to feel that the men who have so triumphed over such difficulties must not only have themselves worked well, but also must have been well led, and I should not be doing justice to my own feelings if I were not, on my

CHAP.

XIL]

arrival here, to repeat the expressions of admiration extorted from me as I passed along, in view of the difficulties you had to meet, and which you have so triumphantly surmounted.

"I have the honour to be, dear Colonel Wolseley,

" Yours very truly,

"A. G. ARCHIBALD.

"To Colonel Wolseley, Fort Garry."

This letter gave great pleasure to the officers and men of the Expedition, and doubly so, on the principle that "bis dat qui cito dat!"—a principle too frequently lost sight of in the bestowal of praise, though not in that of censure.

In bringing this short narrative to a close, it may not be amiss to compare this Expedition, in its political bearings and results, with other Expeditions, and notably with the recent Abyssinian Expedition. The latter was undertaken for the purpose of rescuing some half-dozen English subjects from the hands of a barbarian chieftain; it was supported by the sentiment of the whole English nation; it was magnificently and successfully carried out under the direction of Sir Robert Napier, and, happening at a time when no foreign war or event of importance distracted the attention of England, it commanded the sympathy, and by its success flattered the vanity, of all classes of But at what a cost! Englishmen. £9,000,000 is surely a heavy price to pay for a brilliant and

236

[CHAP.

ŀ

e

[сплр.

xII.]

to meet, and

Volseley,

ARCHIBALD.

fficers and so, on the a principle estowal of

ose, it may ion, in its er Expedi-Abyssinian n for the n English chieftain ; the whole d success-Sir Robert no foreign attention y, and by classes of 9,000,000 lliant and

successful, but by no means, in its results, an important undertaking.

The Red River Expedition, while it had to be conducted over a greater distance, and through a more inhospitable region as well as greater physical obstacles, was overshadowed in its very infancy by the great European war, which entirely absorbed all the interest and sympathy of the public; this no doubt accounts for much of the general indifference felt about the whole affair. It is not, however, too much to say that, in its political bearings and results, no event of similar importance has for many years been accomplished with so little expenditure of time and money. From first to last the time occupied was five months, the expenditure about £400,000, of which England only pays one-fourth. Under the energetic and skilful conduct of Colonel (now Sir Garnet) Wolseley, no accident or mistake occurred throughout the whole Expedition, and not one single life was lost!

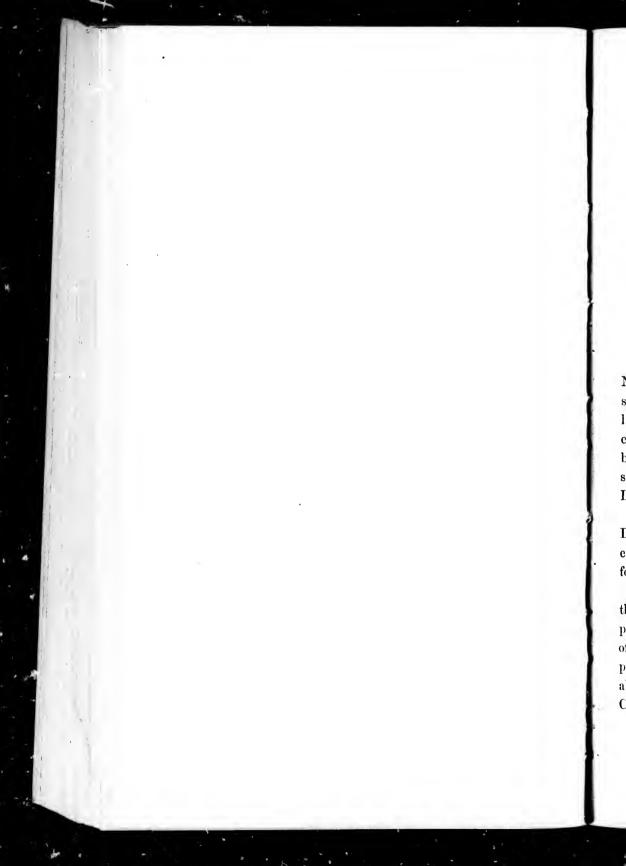
When the excitement of the present great war on the Continent has subsided, and the bloody battles and sieges which have gone far to ruin one great nation, and have caused untold misery to thousands of French and Germans, have become matter of history, then may the less dazzling but

# 238 THE RED RIVER EXPEDITION. [CHAP. XII.

bloodless campaign of the Red River Expedition claim its share of public attention—a campaign which can tell no tale of sickening horrors or devastated homes, but in its peaceful accomplishment has carried and asserted the power of Great Britain to the Far West, and while opening up a virgin soil for her sons in a distant land, has added yet another province to that Empire on which the sun never sets. . [силр. XII.

Expedition -a campaign - horrors or accomplishver of Great pening up a d, has added n which the

# APPENDICES.



# APPENDIX A.

#### LIST OF RIGHTS.

1. THAT in view of the present exceptional duties of the North-West, duties upon goods imported into this country shall continue as at present (except in the case of spirituous liquors) for three years, and for such further time as may elapse until there be uninterrupted railroad communication between Red River Settlement and St. Paul, and also steam communication between Red River Settlement and Lake Superior.

2. As long as this country remains a Territory in the Dominion of Canada, there shall be no direct taxation, except such as may be imposed by the Local Legislature for municipal or other local purposes.

3. During the time this country remains a Territory in the Dominion of Canada, all military, civil, and other public expenses in connection with the general government of the country, or that have hitherto been borne by the public funds of the Settlement, beyond the receipt of the above-mentioned duties, shall be met by the Dominion of Canada.

4. That while the burden of public expense in this

#### APPENDIX A.

country is borne by Canada, the country be governed under a Lieutenant-Governor from Canada, and a Legislature, three members of which, being heads of departments of the Government, shall be nominated by the Governor-General of Canada.

5. That after the expiration of this exceptional period, the country shall be governed, as regards its local affairs, as the provinces of Ontario and Quebee are now governed, by a Legislature elected by the people, and a Ministry responsible to it, under a Lieutenant-Governor appointed by the Governor-General of Canada.

6. That there shall be no interference by the Dominion Parliament in the local affairs of this Territory other than is allowed in any of the provinces of the Confederation; and that this Territory shall have and enjoy, in all respects, the same privileges, advantages, and aids in meeting the public expenses of this Territory as the Confederated provinces have and enjoy.

7. That while the North-West remains a Territory, the Legislature has a right to pass all laws local to the Territory, over the veto of the Lieutenant-Governor, by a two-third vote.

8. A Homestead and Pre-emption Law.

9. That while the North-West remains a Territory, the sum of 25,000 dols. (twenty-five thousand dollars) a year be appropriated for schools, roads, and bridges.

10. That all public buildings be at the cost of the Dominion Treasury.

11. That there shall be guaranteed uninterrupted steam communication to Lake Superior within five years, and also the establishment by rail of a connection with the

LIST OF RIGHTS.

243

be governed and a Legisdepartments the Governor-

tional period, s local affairs, now governed, nd a Ministry nor appointed

the Dominion ory other than 'onfederation ; enjoy, in all and aids in ritory as the

Territory, the local to the overnor, by a

Territory, the dollars) a year ges.

e cost of the

rrupted steam ive years, and tion with the American railway as soon as it reaches the International line.

12. That the English and French languages be common in the Legislature and Courts, and that all public documents and acts of the Legislature be published in both languages.

13. That the Judge of the Supreme Court speak the French and English languages.

14. That treaties be concluded between the Dominion and the several Indian tribes of the country as soon as possible.

15. That until the population entitles us to more, we have four representatives in the Canadian Parliament one in the Senate, and three in the Legislative Assembly.

16. That all properties, rights, and privileges, as hitherto enjoyed by us, be respected; and the recognition and arrangement of local custom, usages, and privileges, be made under the control of the Local Legislature.

17. That the Local Legislature of this Territory have full control of all the public land inside a circumference having Fort Garry as the centre, and that the radii of this circumference be the number of miles that the American line is distant from Fort Garry.

18. That every man in this country (except uncivilized and unsettled Indians) who has attained the age of twentyone years, and every British subject, a stranger to this Territory, who has resided three years in the country, and is a householder, shall have a right to vote at the election of a member to serve in the Legislature of the country, and in the Dominion Parliament; and every foreign subject, other than a British subject, who has resided the same

#### APPENDIX A.

length of time in the country, and is a householder, shall have the same right to vote, on condition of his taking the oath of allegiance, it being understood that this article be subject to amendment exclusively by the Local Legislature.

19. That the North-West Territory shall never be held liable for any portion of the £300,000 paid to the Hudson's Bay Company, or for any portion of the public debt of Canada, as it stands at the time of our entering the Confederation; and if, thereafter, we be called upon to assume our share of the said public debt, we consent only on condition that we first be allowed the amount for which we shall be held liable.

(Signed)

W. COLDWELL, LAN. SCHMIDT, Secretaries to the Convention. blder, shall taking the s article be beal Legis-

ver be held nid to the the public ar entering called upon we consent amount for

WELL, IMIDT, he Convention.

# APPENDIX B.

#### LIST OF ARTICLES IN THE BOATS.

In each boat there will be the following tools and equipment:—Two felling axes, one pickaxe, one spade, one shovel, two hand axes, two Flanders kettles, two frying-pans, two sails, two boathooks, two spare oars (making eight in all), four rowlocks, one set of blocks (single and double), one boat lamp, six thimbles for setting poles, one dipper, one rubber bucket, one boat sponge, two cans of paint (black and white), five pounds of assorted boat nails, one double tin oilcan, one tin with pitch, one tarpaulin, fenders, sixty fathoms tow line, one can mosquito oil, &c., &c., spare plank and tools necessary for repairs. There will also be the cooking utensils, &c., of the boatmen, for which the coxswain of each boat will be responsible. With each brigade of boats there will be a carpenter's chest of tools and a fishing net.

Standing Orders R. R. Expedition.

# APPENDIX C.

#### PROVINCE OF MANITOBA BILL.

AN Act to amend and continue the Act 32 and 33 Vietoria, chapter 3, and to establish and provide for the Government of the Province of Manitoba.

Whereas it is probable that Her Majesty the Queen may, pursuant to the "British North America Act, 1867," be pleased to admit Rupert's Land and the North-Western Territory into the Union or Dominion of Canada, before the next session of the Parliament of Canada :

And whereas it is expedient to prepare for the transfer of the said Territories to the Government of Canada at the time appointed by the Queen for such admission :

And whereas it is expedient also to provide for the organization of part of the said Territories as a Province, and for the establishment of a Government thereof, and to make provision for the Civil Government of the remaining part of the said Territories, not included within the limits of the Province:

Therefore, Her Majesty, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate and House of Commons of Canada, enacts as follows :—

1. On, from, and after the day upon which the Queen,

#### PROVINCE OF MANITOBA BILL.

by and with the advice and consent of Her Majesty's Most Honourable Privy Council, under the authority of the 146th section of the "British North America Act, 1867," shall, by Order in Council in that behalf, admit Rupert's Land and the North-Western Territory into the Union or Dominion of Canada, there shall be formed out of the same a Province, which shall be one of the Provinces of the Dominion of Canada, and which shall be called the Province of Manitoba, and be bounded as follows : that is to say, commencing at the point where the meridian of ninety-six degrees west longitude from Greenwich intersects the parellel of forty-nine degrees north latitude, thence due west along the said parellel of forty-nine degrees north latitude (which forms a portion of the boundary line between the United States of America and the said North-Western Territory) to the meridian of ninety-nine degrees of west longitude, then due north along the said meridian of ninety-nine degrees of west longitude to the intersection of the same with the parallel of fifty degrees and thirty minutes north latitude, thence due east along the said parallel of fifty degrees and thirty minutes north latitude to its intersection, with the beforementioned meridian of ninety-six degrees west longitudethence due south along the said meridian of ninety-six degrees west longitude to the place of beginning.

2. On, from, and after the said day on which the Order of the Queen in Council shall take effect as aforesaid, the provisions of the "British North America Act, 1867," shall, except those parts thereof which are in terms made, or by reasonable intendment may be held to be specially applicable to, or only to affect one or more, but not the

L.

32 and 33 ovide for the

the Queen Act, 1867," orth-Western nada, before

the transfer anada at the on :

ride for the a Province, hereof, and t of the reuded within

advice and of Canada,

the Queen,

#### APPENDIX C.

whole of the Provinces now composing the Dominion, and except so far as the same may be varied by this Act, be applicable to the Province of Manitoba, in the same way and to the like extent as they apply to the several Provinces of Canada, and as if the Province of Manitoba had been one of the Provinces originally united by the said Act.

3. The said Province shall be represented in the Senate of Canada by two Members, until it shall have, according to decennial census, a population of fifty thousand souls, and from thenceforth it shall be represented therein by three Members, until it shall have, according to decennial census, a population of seventy-five thousand souls, and from thenceforth it shall be represented therein by four Members.

4. The said Province shall be represented, in the first instance, in the House of Commons, by four Members, and for that purpose shall be divided by proclamation of the Governor-General into four electoral districts, each of which shall be represented by one Member. Provided that on the completion of the census in the year 1881, and of each decennial census afterwards, the representation of the said Province shall be re-adjusted according to the provisions of the fifty-first section of the "British North America Act, 1867."

5. Until the Parliament of Canada otherwise provides, the qualifications of voters at elections of members of the House of Commons shall be the same as for the Legislative Assembly hereinafter mentioned. And no person shall be qualified to be elected or to sit and vote as a member for any electoral district, unless he is a duly qualified voter within the said Province.

#### PROVINCE OF MANITOBA BILL.

249

ominion, and is Act, be apame way and Provinces of ad been one Act.

n the Senate re, according msand souls, l therein by to decennial l souls, and rein by four

in the first r Members, clamation of iets, each of Provided ar 1881, and sentation of ding to the ritish North

se provides, bers of the the Legisl no person l vote as a e is a duly 6. For the said Province there shall be an officer styled the Lieutenant-Governor, appointed by the Governor-General in Council, by instrument, under the Great Seal of Canada.

7. The Executive Council of the Province shall be composed of such persons and under such designations as the Lieutenant-Governor shall from time to time think fit, and in the first instance of not more than five persons.

8. Unless and until the Executive Government of the Province otherwise directs, the seat of Government of the same shall be at Fort Garry, or within one mile thereof.

9. There shall be a Legislature for the Province, consisting of the Lieutenant-Governor, and of two Houses, styled respectively the Legislative Council of Manitoba, and the Legislative Assembly of Manitoba.

10. The Legislative Council shall, in the first instance, be composed of seven Members, and after the expiration of four years from the time of the first appointment of such seven Members, may be increased to not more than twelve Members. Every Member of the Legislative Council shall be appointed by the Lieutenant-Governor in the Queen's name, by instrument, under the Great Seal of Manitoba, and shall hold office for the term of his life, unless and until the Legislature of Manitoba otherwise provides under the "British North America Act, 1867."

11. The Lieutenant-Governor may from time to time, by instrument under the Great Seal, appoint a Member of the Legislative Conneil to be Speaker thereof, and may remove him, and appoint another in his stead.

12. Until the Legislature of the Province otherwise

provides, the presence of a majority of the whole number of the Legislative Council, including the Speaker, shall be necessary to constitute a meeting for the exercise of its powers.

13. Questions arising in the Legislative Council shall be decided by a majority of voices, and the Speaker shall in all cases have a vote, and when voices are equal, the decision shall be deemed to be in the negative.

14. The Legislative Assembly shall be composed of twenty-four Members, to be elected to represent the electoral divisions into which the said Province may be divided by the Lieutenant-Governor as hereinafter mentioned.

15. The presence of a majority of the Members of the Legislative Assembly shall be necessary to constitute a meeting of the House for the exercise of its powers, and for that purpose the Speaker shall be reckoned as a Member.

16. The Lieutenant-Governor shall (within six months of the date of the Order of Her Majesty in Council admitting Rupert's Land and the North-Western Territory into the Union), by Proclamation under the Great Seal, divide the said Province into twenty-four electoral divisions, due regard being had to existing local divisions and population.

17. Every male person shall be entitled to vote for a member to serve in the Legislative Assembly for any electoral division, who is qualified as follows; that is to say, if he is—

(1.) Of the full age of twenty-one years, and not subject to any legal incapacity.

### PROVINCE OF MANITOBA BILL.

tole number ker, shall be ercise of its

ncil shall be ker shall in 2 equal, the 4

composed of present the nee may be inafter men-

nbers of the constitute a powers, and koned as a

six months in Council stern Terrir the Great our electoral cal divisions

o vote for a bly for any ; that is to

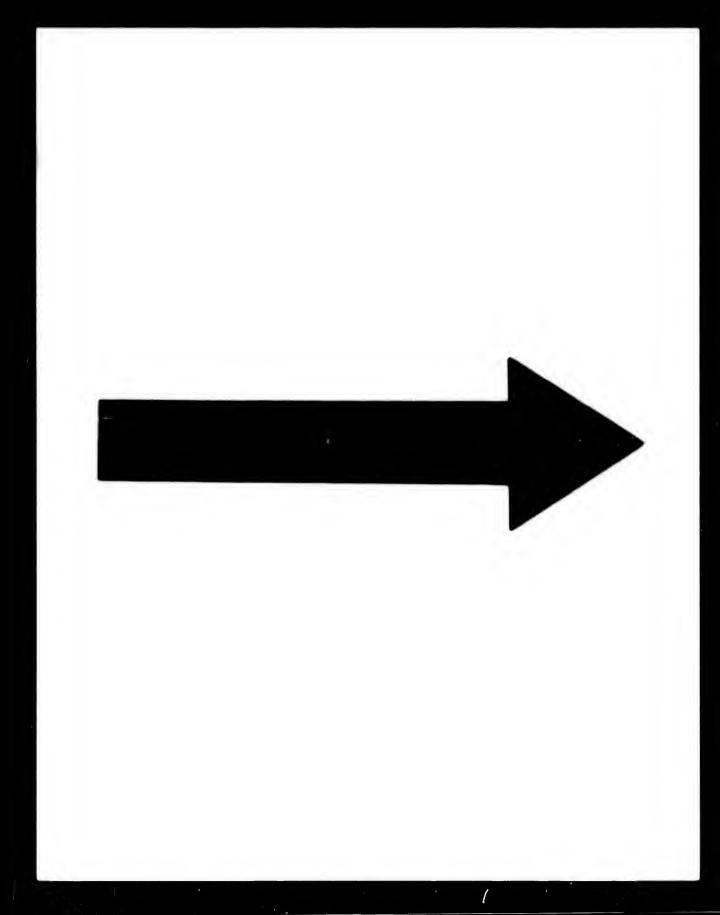
s, and not

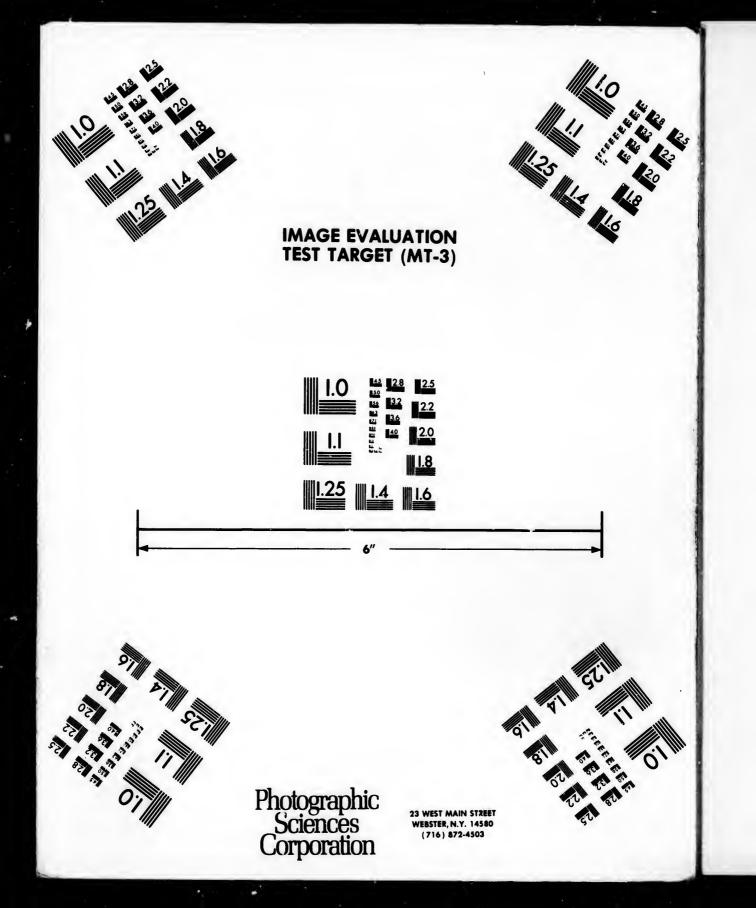
(2.) A subject of Her Majesty by birth or naturalization.

- (3.) And a bond fide householder within the electoral division, at the date of the Writ of Election of the same, and has been a bond fide householder for one year next before the said date; or,
- (4.) If, being of the full age of twenty-one years, and not subject to any incapacity, and a subject of Her Majesty by birth or naturalization, he was any time within twelve months prior to the passing of this Act, and (though in the interim temporarily absent) is at the time of such election a *bond fide* householder, and was resident within the electoral division at the date of the Writ of Election for the same.

But this fourth sub-section shall apply only to the first election to be held under this Act for Members to serve in the Legislative Assembly aforesaid.

18. For the first election of Members to serve in the Legislative Assemby, and until the Legislature of the Province otherwise provides, the Lieutenant-Governor shall cause writs to be issued by such person, in such form, and addressed to such Returning Officers as he thinks fit; and for such first election, and until the Legislature of the Province otherwise provides, the Lieutenant-Governor shall, by Proclamation, prescribe and declare the oaths to be taken by voters, the powers and duties of Returning and Deputy Returning Officers, the proceedings to be observed at such elections, and the period during which such election may be continued, and such other







APPENDIX C.

provisions in respect to such first election as he may think fit.

19. Every Legislative Assembly shall continue for four years from the date of the return of the Writs for returning the same (subject, nevertheless, to being sooner dissolved by the Lieutenant-Governor), and no longer, and the first session thereof shall be called at such time as the Lieutenant-Governor shall appoint.

20. There shall be a session of the Legislature once at least in every year, so that twelve months shall not intervene between the last sitting of the last Legislature in one session, and its first sitting in the next session.

21. The following provisions of the "British North America Act, 1867," respecting the House of Commons of Canada, shall extend and apply to the Legislative Assembly, that is to say:—Provisions relating to the election of a Speaker, originally, and on vacancies—the duties of the Speaker—the absence of the Speaker and the mode of voting, as if those provisions were here reenacted, and made applicable in terms to the Legislative Assembly.

22. In and for the Province, the said Legislature may exclusively make laws in relation to education, subject and according to the following provisions :—

- (1.) Nothing in any such law shall prejudicially affect any right or privilege with respect to Denominational Schools which any class of persons have by law or practice in the Province at the Union.
- (2.) An appeal shall lie to the Governor-General in Council from any act or decision of the Legis-

### PROVINCE OF MANITOBA BILL.

as he may

nue for four for returning er dissolved and the first time as the

ture once at shall not in-Legislature ext session. ritish North of Commons Legislative ting to the cancics—the speaker and ore here re-Legislative

slature may on, subject

rejudicially respect to ny class of he Province

-General in ' the Legislature of the Province, or of any provisional authority, affecting any right or privilege of the Protestant or Roman Catholic minority of the Queen's subjects in relation to education.

(3.) In case any such Provisional Law as from time to time seems to the Governor-General in Council requisite for the due execution of the provisions of this section is not made, or in case any decision of the Governor-General in Council on any appeal under this section is not duly executed by the proper provincial authority in that behalf, then, and in every such case, and as far only as the circumstances of each case require, the Parliament of Canada may make remedial laws for the due execution of the provisions of this section, and of any decision of the Governor-General in Council under this section.

23. Either the English or the French language may be used by any person in the debates of the Houses of the Legislature, and both these languages shall be used in the respective Records and Journals of those Houses, and either of those languages may be used by any person, or in Pleading or Process, in or issuing from any Court in Canada established under the "British North America Act, 1867," or in or from all or any of the Courts of the Province. The Acts of the Legislature shall be printed and published in both those languages.

24. Inasmuch as the Province is not in debt, the said Province shall be entitled to be paid, and to receive from the Government of Canada, by half-yearly payments in

APPENDIX C.

advance, interest at the rate of five per centum per annum on the sum of four hundred and seventy-two thousand and ninety dollars.

25. The sum of thirty thousand dollars shall be paid yearly by Canada to the Province for the support of its Government and Legislature, and an annual grant in aid of the said Province shall be made, equal to eighty cents per head of the population, estimated at seventeen thousand souls; and such grant of eighty cents per head shall be augmented in proportion to the increase of population, as may be shown by the census that shall be taken thereof in the year One Thousand Eight Hundred and Eighty-one, and by each subsequent decennial census, until its population amounts to four hundred thousand souls, at which amount such grant shall remain thereafter, and such sum shall be in full settlement of all future demands on Canada, and shall be paid half-yearly, in advance, to the said Province.

26. Canada will assume and defray the charges for the following services :---

- (1.) Salary of the Lieutenant-Governor.
- (2.) Salaries and allowances of the Judges of the Superior and District or County Courts.
- (3.) Charges in respect of the Department of the Customs.
- (4.) Postal Department.
- (5.) Protection of Fisheries.
- (6.) Militia.
- (7.) Geological Survey.
- (8.) The Penitentiary.

### PROVINCE OF MANITOBA BILL.

n per annum housand and

hall be paid apport of its grant in aid eighty cents t seventeen ats per head ase of popuall be taken fundred and nial census, ed thousand n thereafter, of all future df-yearly, in

arges for the

Judges of or County

nent of the

(9.) And such further charges as may be incident to and connected with the services which by the "British North America Act, 1867," appertain to the General Government, and as are, or may be, allowed to the other Provinces.

27. The Customs' duties now by law chargeable in Rupert's Land, shall be continued without increase for the period of three years from and after the passing of this Act, and the proceeds of such duties shall form part of the Consolidated Revenue Fund of Canada.

28. Such provisions of the Customs' Laws of Canada (other than such as prescribe the rate of dutics payable) as may from time to time be declared by the Governor-General in Council to apply to the Province of Manitoba, shall be applicable thereto, and be in force therein accordingly.

29. Such provisions of the Laws of Canada respecting the Inland Revenue, including those fixing the amount of duties, as may be from time to time declared by the Governor-General in Council applicable to the said Province, shall apply thereto, and be in force accordingly.

30. All ungranted or waste lands in the Province shall be, from and after the date of the said transfer, vested in the Crown, and administered by the Government of Canada for the purposes of the Dominion, subject to and except and so far as the same may be affected by the conditions and stipulations contained in the agreement for the surrender of Rupert's Land by the Hudson's Bay Company to Her Majesty.

31. And whereas it is expedient, towards the extinguishment of the Indian Title to the lands in the Province, to

APPENDIX C.

appropriate a portion of such ungranted lands to the extent of one million four hundred thousand acres thereof for the benefit of the families of the half-breed residents, it is hereby enacted that, under regulations to be from time to time made by the Governor-General in Council, the Lieutenant-Governor shall select such lots or tracts in such parts of the Province as he may deem expedient, to the extent aforesaid, and divide the same among the children of the half-breed heads of families residing in the Province at the time of the said transfer to Canada, and the same shall be granted to the said children respectively, in such mode and on such conditions as to settlement or otherwise as the Governor-General in Council shall from time to time determine.

32. For the quieting of titles and assuring the settlers in the Province the peaceable possession of lands now held by them, it is enacted as follows :—

(1.) All grants of land in freehold made by the Hudson's Bay Company, up to the eighth day of March, in the year 1869, shall, if required by the owner, be confirmed by grant from the Crown.

t

0

p

- (2.) All grants of estates less than freehold in land made by the Hudson's Bay Company up to the eighth day of March aforesaid, shall, if required by the owner, be converted into an estate in freehold by grant from the Crown.
- (3.) All titles by occupancy with the sanction and under the licence and authority of the Hudson's Bay Company up to the eighth day of March aforesaid, of land in that part of the

### PROVINCE OF MANIFOBA BILL.

ands to the acres thereof ed residents, to be from Council, the racts in such lient, to the the children the Province and the same ely, in such at or otherll from time

the settlers f lands now

ade by the eighth day , if required ant from the

hold in land apany up to uid, shall, if cted into an the Crown. anction and of the Hudghth day of part of the Province in which the Indian Title has been extinguished, shall, if required by the owner, be converted into an estate in freehold by grant from the Crown.

257

٩

- (4.) All persons in peaceable possession of tracts of land at the time of the transfer to Canada, in those parts of the Province in which the Indian Title has not been extinguished, shall have the right of pre-emption of the same, on such terms and conditions as may be determined by the Governor in Council.
- (5.) The Lieutenant-Governor is hereby authorized, under regulations to be made from time to time by the Governor-General in Conneil, to make all such provisions for ascertaining and adjusting, on fair and equitable terms, the rights of common, and rights of cutting hay, held and enjoyed by the settlers in the Province, and for the commutation of the same by grants of land from the Crown.

33. The Governor-General in Council shall from time to time settle and appoint the mode and form of Grants of Land from the Crown, and any Order in Council for that purpose, when published in the *Canada Gazette*, shall have the same force and effect as if it were a portion of this Act.

34. Nothing in this Act shall in any way prejudice or affect the rights or properties of the Hudson's Bay Company, as contained in the conditions under which that company surrendered Rupert's Land to Her Majesty.

35. And with respect to such portion of Rupert's Land

### APPENDIX C.

and the North-Western Territory, as is not included in the Province of Manitoba, it is hereby enacted, that the Lieutenant-Governor of the said Province shall be appointed, by commission under the Great Seal of Canada, to be the Lieutenant-Governor of the same, under the name of the North-West Territories, and subject to the provisions of the Act in the next section mentioned.

36. Except as hereinbefore is enacted and provided, the Act of the Parliament of Canada passed in the now last Session thereof, and entitled "An Act for the temporary government of Rupert's Land, and the North-Western Territory when united to Canada," is hereby re-enacted, extended, and continued in force until the first day of January, 1871, and until the end of the Session of Parliament then next succeeding.

(Signed)

True copy.

JOHN F. TAYLOR,

Clerk of the Senate.

OFFICE OF THE SENATE OF CANADA, OTTAWA, 16TH MAY, 1870. t included in sted, that the shall be apal of Canada, ac, under the ubject to the ationed.

provided, the a the now last he temporary forth-Western by re-enacted, e first day of e Session of

. TAYLOR, rk of the Senate.

יושטי זען אווטוואי זעו יטעין.	werenne ferre verservere	Angurs.	For accoutrements. 414	Medical comforts and equipment, boxes.	Tins.	Canteens, Hp., A. and B.	Linseel meal, boxes.	Salt, kegs.	Stones, grind.	Tobacco, boxes.	Soap, cases of.	Number of days' rations for total 731 men.
-	000		5		30							Biscuit 54 8
	000		5		33							Flour 31
		2	5		15				1			Pork 6
)	000		6		34							Sugar 7
8	000		5		27							Tea 6
and with the	000	1	5		28							Beans 43 / 7
	000	•••	6	13	32	2	1	1		4		Potatoes 28
л	000		5	18	31		1					Pepper 6
•%	,000		5	7	26					4		
• •			ŀ		4							
	5,000		5	3	27							
	5,000		5		26					1	1	
-	3,000	3	1 57	41	313	2	2	1	1	9	1	_

[ To face page 255.

(Signed)

A. MEYER,

Deputy Assistant Commissary-General.

.

											[Nu	mber	'S.				
	Departure.							ı	Number of boats.	Officer Commanding.		Regiment Embarked,		). and Men.	eurs.		
	Da	ito.		Honr.	Brigade.	Numbe				Officers.	N. C. O.	Voyageurs.	Guides.	Total.			
1.	July	16th		8.30 р.м.	A	6	Capt. Young		1st Bn. 60th	5	50	12	1	68			
2.	,,	,,		,,	В	6	,, Ward		<b>,</b> ,	4	50	12		66			
3.	,,	,,		19	С	5	Lieut. Alleyne, R.A.		R. A. and R. E	2	38	10		50			
4.	,,	17th		3 г.м	D	7	Capt. Dundas		1st Bn. 60th	4	50	14	1	69			
5.	,,	,,		4 ,,	Е	6	"Buller …		<b>,,</b> ,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	3	50	12		65			
6.	,,	18th		6 " …	F	6	,, Northey		<b>99</b> ··· ··	3	49	12	1	65			
7.	,,	19th		4.30 P.M.	G	7	,, Wallace	•••	1st Bn. 60th A.S.C. ) and A.H.C.	5	<b>5</b> 8	14	1	78			
8.		21st		8 A.M	н	6	" Calderon	••••	1st. Bn. 60th	. 4	49	12	1	66			
9.	,,	,,		4 р.м	I	6	,, Scott		1st Ontario Rifles	. 6	48	12	1	67			
10.	,,	,,		6 "	Gig	1	,, Huyshe, 1st R.	B.	H. Q. Staff	. 2	4	2		8			
11.		22nd		12.30 р.м.	K	6	,, McDonald	•••	1st Ontario Rifles	. 4	49	12		65			
2.	,,	,,		3.30 "	L	6	,, Herchmer		39 99	. 3	48	12	1	64			
	.,									45	543	136	7	731			

# APPENDIX D.

EMBARKATION RURN, Red River Expeditionary Force, from MeNeill Bay, Lake S

	[]	Nur	nber	8.										tal.			Ax	es.										of.		
Officers.	N. C. O. and Men.		Voyageurs.	Guides.	Total.	Biscuits.	Flour.	Pork.	Sugar.	Tea.	Beans.	Preserved potatoes.	Pepper.	Days' rations, for total.	Amnunition, rounds.	Augurs.	Felling.	Pick.	Blankets.	Fuze.	Gimlets.	Hammers, sledge.	Hammers, small.	Hatchets, hand.	Kettles, Flanders.	Ovens, Field.	Pans, Frying.	Bedding, Hp., lags	Powder kees.	Rope lashings.
. 5	50	5	12	1	68	brls. 34	brls. 20	brls. 45	brls. 6	chs. 6	bgs. 8	case 6	1b. 84		,000		10	5		case				11	10		7			eoil-
. 4	50	0	12		66	28	31	42	6	6	10	8	8		i <b>,0</b> 00	•••	10	5						10	10		7			
. 2	38	8	10		50	21	17	25	4th	3rd	4	8	5			2	12	16		1	2		1	10	8		6		2	1
. 4	5(	0	14	1	69	37	31	52	8	7	14	8	9		,000		12	6					•••	12	12		8			
. 8	5	0	12		65	50	32	42	6	5	9	8	8	<i>Vide</i> last column.	,000		10	5						10	10		7			
. (	4	9	12	1	6 <b>5</b>	504	37	44	6	6	13	8	8	t col	,000	1	10	5	25		2	3	2	10	15		7			
	5 5	8	14	1	78	40	42	50	7	7	13	8	9	le las	<b>,00</b> 0		19	11						22	13	1	18			
	4	9	12	1	66	51	33	44	6	6	11	8	8	V'io	.000		10	5						10	10		7	8		
(	3 4	8	12	1	67	54	35	46	7	6	10	9	8		i <b>,00</b> 0		10	5						10	10		7			
	2	4	2		8	2	2	3	<u>_36</u>	18		1	12				2	1						2	1		1			
	4	9	12		65	*49	37	45	6	6	10	11	8		5,000		10	5						10	8		7			
	3 4	8	12	1	64	<b>†60</b>	37	44	8	6	9	9	8		5,000		10	5				<u> </u>		10	6		7			
4	5 54	3	136	7	731	4764	354	482	70 47 H	64 28 H	111	92	88	•	3,000	3	125	74	25	1	4	3	3	127	113	1	89	8	2	1

\* 47 at 48 lbs. 2 at 60 ,,

+ 53 at 84 lbs. 1 at 60 .. 6 at 42 ..

McNeill	Bay,	Lake	She	band	lowan.
---------	------	------	-----	------	--------

S

TITTTE TO LA CONT

il . . • • 1

. .

	1		4.														Slin rop	gs, e.				1 wa
	Ovens, Field.	Pans, Frying.	Belding, Hp., bags of.	Powder kegs.	Rope lashings.	Rope, Manilla coil.	Saws + cut.	Saws, hand.	Scales and weights.	Shovels.	Spades.	Spikes and nails.	Tape, measuring.	Tarpaulins.	Tents, hell.	Marques.	Large.	Small.	Straps, portage.	llags, spare.	Tins of mosquito cil.	For blankets.
		7			coils					5	5	1b. 			6		15	20	36	50	6	10
		7								5	5				7		15	20	30	50	6	1
		6		2	1	1				8	4	50	1		6		12	16	24	<b>3</b> 0	5	
		8						4		6	6				8		18	24	36	81	7	1
		7								5	5				6		15	20	30	90	6	1
		7					2	3		5	5				15		15	20	30	73	6	1
	1	18							1	13	13				11		18	24	36	70	7	1
		7	8				5	1		5	5				6		15	20	30	62	6	1
)		7								5	5				6		15	20	30	60	6	1
1		1									1				2				6	4	1	
3		7								5	5				5		15	20	33	60	6	
;		7								5	5				6		15	20	30	60	6	
3	1	89	8	2	1	1	7	8	1	67	64	50	1		84	•	168	234	348	660	68	1

+ 53 at 84 lbs. 1 at 60 ,, 6 at 42 ,,

[ To face page 258

. \$

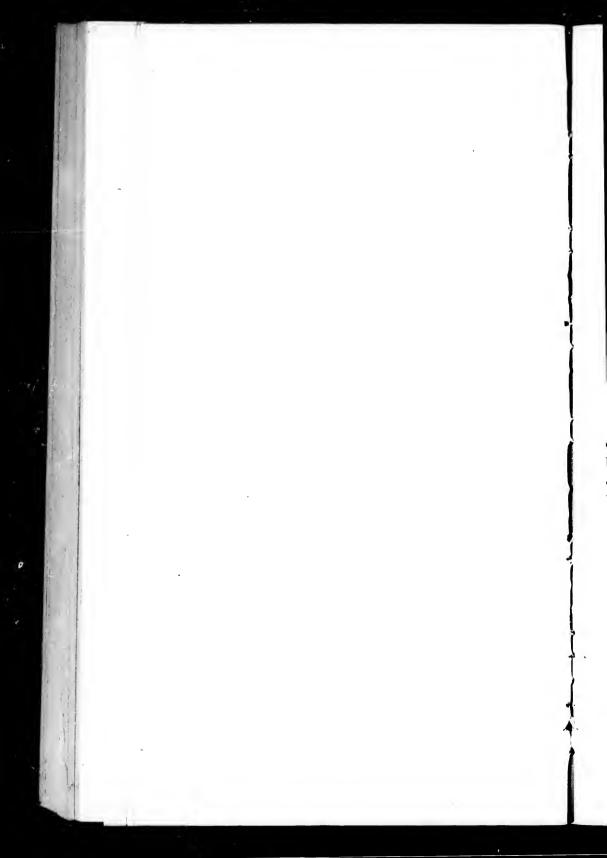
ling	gs,			il.	Bag		and es.		and B.	ies.					
	Small.	Straps, portage.	Bags, spare.	Tins of mosquito cil.	For blankets.	For accoutrements.	Medical comforts and equipment, boxes.	Tins.	Canteens, Hp., A. and	Linsed meal, boxes.	Salt, kegs.	Stones, grind.	Tobacco, boxes.	Soap, cases of.	Number of days' rations for total 731 men.
5	20	36	50	6	10	5		30							Biscuit 54 } 85
5	20	30	50	6	10	5		33							Flour 31 5
2	16	24	30	5	8	5		15				1			Pork 66
3	24	36	81	7	12	6		34							Sugar 71
5	20	30	90	6	10	5		27							Tea 69
5	20	30	73	6	10	5		28							Beans 43 / 71
8	24	36	70	7	12	6	13	32	2	1	1		4		Potatoes 28
5	20	30	62	6	10	5	18	31		1					Pepper 69
5	20	30	60	6	10	5	7	26					4		
		6	4	1				4							
5	20	33	60	6	10	5	3	27							
15	20	30	60	6	10	5		26					1	1	
68	234	348	660	68	112	57	41	313	2	2	1	1	9	1	

CAMP, LAKE SHEBANDOWAN, 23rd July, 1870.

(Signed)

A. MEYER,

Deputy Assistant Commissary-General.



# APPENDIX E.

## STANDING ORDERS FOR THE RED RIVER EXPEDITIONARY FORCE.

### TORONTO, 14TH MAY, 1870.

1. THE Expeditionary Force will proceed from the end of the Thunder Bay Road to the Lake of the Woods in boats. It will move by detachments, consisting of one or more companies. To each company a brigade of five boats will be attached.

2. The boats will be numbered 1, 2, 3, &e., &e., and the brigade will be distinguished by letters beginning at A.

3. In each boat there will be the following tools and equipment:—Two felling axes, one pickaxe, one spade, one shovel, two hand axes, two Flanders kettles, two frying pans, two sails, two boathooks, two spare oars (making eight in all), four rowlocks, one set of blocks (single and double), one boat lamp, six thimbles for setting poles, one dipper, one rubber bucket, one boat sponge, two cans of paint (black and white), five lbs. assorted boat nails, one double tin oilcan, one tin with pitch, one tarpaulin,

8.2

### APPENDIX E.

fenders, sixty fathoms tow line, one can mosquito oil, &c., &c., spare plank, and tools necessary for repairs. There will also be the cooking utensils, &c., of the boatmen, for which the coxswain of each boat will be responsible. In every boat there will be thirty days' rations for the soldiers and boatmen, besides, also, about one ton of surplus stores.

4. With each brigade of boats there will be a carpenter's chest of tools and a fishing net.

5. The scale of rations for every one will be as follows : 1 lb. of biscuit, or  $1\frac{1}{2}$  lbs. of soft bread, 1 lb. of salt pork, or  $1\frac{1}{2}$  lbs. of fresh meat, 2 ozs. of sugar, 1 oz. of tea,  $\frac{1}{2}$  oz. of salt when fresh meat is issued,  $\frac{1}{3}$  pint of beans or  $\frac{1}{4}$  lb. preserved potatoes,  $\frac{1}{3}$  oz. pepper; the ration of flour when issued to be  $1\frac{1}{2}$  lbs.

6. In each boat there will be three voyageurs, one of whom will be the coxswain, and have entire charge of managing the boat.

7. The Officer or N. C. Officer in command of the men in each boat will render him every assistance in doing so, and any one going counter to his advice must understand that he is taking on himself a grave responsibility, which may possibly affect the safety of the whole party.

8. No one, under any pretence, will be allowed to sit on the gunwale of the boats, and all must learn to sit steadily, moving as little as possible when the boat is under weigh, particularly in rapid water. When under sail the sheets must never be made fast; they must invariably be held by the hand.

9. To prevent supplies being sent to wrong places, it must be remembered that all stores belonging to the

### STANDING ORDERS FOR THE FORCE. 261

puito oil, &c., airs. There boatmen, for ponsible. In r the soldiers 1 of surplus

a carpenter's

e as follows : 1 lb. of salt , 1 oz. of tea, at of beans or ation of flour

geurs, one of re charge of

of the men in doing so, and erstand that y, which may

wed to sit on learn to sit the boat is When under rey must in-

ng places, it ging to the Expedition have been divided into three classes, X, Y, Z, and marked accordingly; those marked Z are to be taken with the force when it finally starts from Fort Frances; those marked Y are to be left at Fort Frances, and those marked X at Fort William.

10. Officers commanding companies will not allow, under any pretence whatever, any person not belonging to the force to be carried in the boats, unless he has a written permission, signed by the Officer commanding the force, or by Lieutenant-Colonel Bolton.

11. The Officer in immediate command at the Shebandowan end of the road will be held strictly responsible that no unauthorised person embarks. He will attend at the departure of each brigade of boats to see this order rigidly carried out.

12. Detachments will be posted temporarily at various portages along the route, for the purpose of facilitating the transport of supplies to Fort Frances.

13. They will carry out this duty as follows :— They will daily send back to the nearest portage in rear a sufficient number of boats to carry fifteen tons of stores : all the boatmen to be employed on this service, supplemented by as many soldiers as the Officer commanding on the spot. may consider necessary ; all soldiers to take their arms and accoutrements with them.

14. One Officer will invariably accompany the boats on this duty, and will take with him at each trip supplies sufficient for the crews for three days, together with a portion of tools, &c., &c. The remainder of the detachment to be employed daily in carrying over the portage at their post the fifteen tons of stores brought up by the

### APPENDIX E.

boats on the previous day, and loading them in the boats sent back to receive them by the detachment in front.

15. The day after each detachment has reached its position, it will commence operations by sending back for the surplus stores of the detachment in rear. This will be continued daily, until all the reserve supplies for Fort Frances have been sent forward.

16. The greatest possible care will be necessary in loading and unloading the boats, to guard against their being injured. The Indian voyageurs having had great experience in loading canoes, their advice is to be attended to in this matter.

17. Every one concerned must learn that the success of the undertaking depends upon these boats, and if those provided be rendered unserviceable they cannot be replaced.

18. The Colonel commanding will therefore have no alternative but to leave behind the crews of any boats that are rendered unfit for use.

19. Colonel McNeill will be stationed at the Shebandowan end of the road. Special instructions will be issued to him for his guidance.

20. Mr. Meyer will be the Control Officer there, to superintend the shipment of stores. He will be responsible for the loading of the boats, and will decide also the description and amount of stores to be sent with each, in addition to those laid down as forming the equipment of each boat. He will hand over to the Captain of each company, the evening before he starts, the complete equipment of his brigade of boats, receiving a receipt from him for it. The Officer commanding the company

### STANDING ORDERS FOR THE FORCE.

263

in the boats t in front. s reached its ding back for This will be blies for Fort

necessary in against their ng had great to be attended

the success of and if those cannot be re-

fore have no my boats that

the Shebanwill be issued

icer there, to ill be responecide also the with each, in equipment of ptain of each the complete ing a receipt the company will make an exact copy of the list in his pocket-book, specifying how he has distributed the stores, &c., by boats, and the name of the Officer or sergeant in charge of each boat.

Mr. Meyer will also hand over to every Officer commanding a company rations complete for his men and voyageurs for thirty days, taking a receipt for the same ; a list of these provisions to be also entered by the Captain in his pocket-book. These provisions must be distributed throughout the boats, so that in each boat there will be thirty days' rations for every one in it.

21. Mr. Meyer will also hand over to every Officer commanding a company, as much surplus supplies (about 2,000 lbs. weight for each boat) as his boats can conveniently carry—Mr. Meyer to be the judge on this point giving him an accurate list of the articles, which will be sent on with the stores when they are passed forward beyond the portage where the company is to be temporarily stationed on the line of route. This list will be signed as correct, or otherwise, by all the Officers commanding at the several portages when the stores pass through their posts; any article deficient to be noted on the list.

22. After the last detachment has left, the stores noted in the margin<sup>1</sup> will be shipped with as little delay as possible, at the rate of fifteen tons a day. One, or, if possible, two days before the last fifteen tons are to be dispatched from Shebandowan Lake, Colonel McNeill will notify in

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> Barrels of flour, barrels of pork, barrels of sugar, bags of biscuit, bags of salt, bags of beans, tins of potatoes, tins of pepper, chests of tea.

writing, to all the posts in advance, stating when the last of the reserved stores will be sent through. He will send a written memorandum with the last fifteen tons, saying they are the last.

Upon the receipt of this information (which will be signed by the Officer commanding each detachment, and forwarded on to the next post), Officers commanding at all posts on the line between Shebandowan and Fort Frances will proceed without delay to the latter place, taking on with them their boats and all their equipments, and the remains of the thirty days' provisions sent originally with them.

23. Upon reaching Fort Frances they will complete their boats with thirty days' rations for all persons with them, and will embark all their surplus stores as the Control Officer, Mr. Mellish, may indicate.

24. As soon as the detachment left at Bare Portage reaches Fort Frances, the 200 men of the 1st, 60th Rifles, which had been stationed there during this movement, will start for Rat Portage to work at it.

25. By these arrangements, the last detachment that left Shebandowan Lake will reach Fort Frances the day after the last fifteen tons of the reserve supplies to be stored there reach that place.

26. The detachments from Fort Frances will severally start from thence, as soon as relieved by the detachment coming up in rear.

27. Fresh instructions will be issued at Fort Frances with reference to the forward movement from that place.

28. In case of a man falling seriously ill or being seriously injured whilst the troops are moving to their

### STANDING ORDERS FOR THE FORCE.

g when the rough. He last fifteen

hich will be achment, and anding at all 'ort Frances e, taking on ats, and the iginally with

omplete their s with them, the Control

are Portage 60th Rifles, ovement, will

chment that aces the day pplies to be

vill severally detachment

Fort Frances that place. ill or being ing to their several stations, the medical officer with the detachment will decide whether the illness or injury is of such a nature as to prevent the man from proceeding further. If he pronounces the man as likely to be unfit for work for some time to come, he is to be left behind at the nearest portage where a detachment is to be stationed, in charge of a noncommissioned officer and one man, who will take their arms, accoutrements, &c., &c., with them. A week's provisions to be left for the three men. All Officers commanding detachments passing by them to see that they have always that quantity in their possession.

As soon as the detachment to be stationed at the portage where the sick man has been left arrives, he will be sent with the returning boats to the rear, to be forwarded on to the Hospital at Fort William.

If there is no medical officer with the detachment, the sick man will be left behind in a similar manner until the arrival of a detachment having a doctor with it.

In both cases the N. C. officer and private left with the man will proceed on to join their company as soon as the man has been sent to the rear.

The Officer commanding the 12th detachment, whilst en route between his post at the Kashaboiwe Portage and Fort Frances, will use his own discretion as to whether he will send serious cases of illness to the Hospital at Fort William, or take them on with him to Fort Frances. If he can possibly do so, he should send them to the former place.

29. Officers commanding detachments, from the time of their embarking at Shebandowan, will keep a Journal of their route, entering the exact hour they start each morn-

### APPENDIX E.

ing, the hours they halt for meals and start again, the time they reach the halting-place for the night, giving the name of the place, the state of the weather, whether they used oars or sails during the day, &c., &c. All irregularities committed by their men to be recorded. They will also state whether they found the fires made by the previous detachment still burning or not.

30. The Officers commanding the several detachments posted at the portages will encamp their men in as compact order as possible on the end of the portage nearest to Fort Frances, except when, from the marshiness of the ground, or other peculiar causes, there are good reasons for departing from this order.

They will pile up their provisions close to the landing place at the Fort Frances side of the portage, covering them over with the boat tarpaulins, and doing everything in their power to protect them from the weather.

The boats will remain on the Shebandowan side of the portage, every precaution being taken to secure them at night by their painters to the shore. When there is a good beach they should be hauled up for the night, being haunched every morning.

31. Each detachment will have a guard, consisting of at least three men per company. They will mount with arms and accoutrements. Up to Fort Frances the arms for the other men will remain in their arm chest, unless when for special reasons the Officers commanding detachments may consider it necessary for the men to keep their arms in the tents.

The arms, if kept in these arm chests, must be frequently inspected by the Captains of Companies, to see

### STANDING ORDERS FOR THE FORCE. 267

rt again, the t, giving the whether they All irregurded. They nade by the

detachments in as comtage nearest iness of the good reasons

the landing ge, covering g everything ather.

i side of the ire them at ire is a good ight, being

onsisting of nount with s the arms nest, unless ing detachkeep their

ust be freies, to see that they are free from rust, and in good and serviceable order.

32. The greatest possible precautions to be taken to guard against the woods being set on fire.

The cooking places will be established as near the water as possible, and no other fires are to be allowed in the camp without the express permission of the Officer commanding the detachment, who will assure himself, before giving such permission, that there is no danger to be apprehended.

When on the move, Officers commanding companies will be held responsible that all fires are extinguished previous to their leaving a camp.

33. As a rule, the reveille will sound at 3 A.M. every morning, and the boats will start as soon after that as possible, the men to have some hot tea before starting. The boats of each brigade must keep as near together as possible, the Captain, with his bugler, being in the leading boat, the senior subaltern and a sergeant in the rear boat.

A halt of one hour will be made at 8 A.M., for breakfast; another halt of an hour at 1 P.M. for dinner. Officers commanding companies may, of course, depart a little from these hours for meals; but, under no circumstances, is more than an hour to be allowed for each meal. They will always halt for the night at least one full hour before dark, so that there will be ample time to establish the camp for the night. When on the move, it is not advisable to pitch tents except when it rains or threatens to do so; even then, the smallest possible number should be pitched.

### APPENDIX E.

34. When it is necessary to track the boats, the crew will be divided into two parties, each consisting of four or five soldiers and one voyageur. Sergeants are not to be employed in tracking. These two parties to relieve one another every two hours. Officers and N. C. Officers in charge of boats will see that the men returning to their boats after tracking put on their serge frocks at once, which are not to be removed for at least half an hour afterwards.

All Officers belonging to this force will be most careful in impressing upon those under their command the great necessity there is for cultivating the good-will of the Indians and others employed as voyageurs.

Colonel Wolseley will punish with the utmost severity any one who ill-treats them.

The same rule applies to all Indians who may be met on the line of route.

It must be remembered that the Government has made a treaty with them, securing the right of way through their country; all are therefore bound to protect them from injury, and it is of special importance that our intercourse with them should be of the most friendly nature.

No Indians but those actually attached to the force are to be allowed to pass the night in our camps.

(Signed)

### G. J. WOLSELEY,

Colond Commanding Expeditionary Force.

ats, the crew isting of four cants are not ics to relieve N. C. Officers ning to their cks at once, half an hour

most careful id the great -will of the

lost severity

y be met on

nt has made hrough their them from intercourse re.

ie force are

EY, tionary Force.

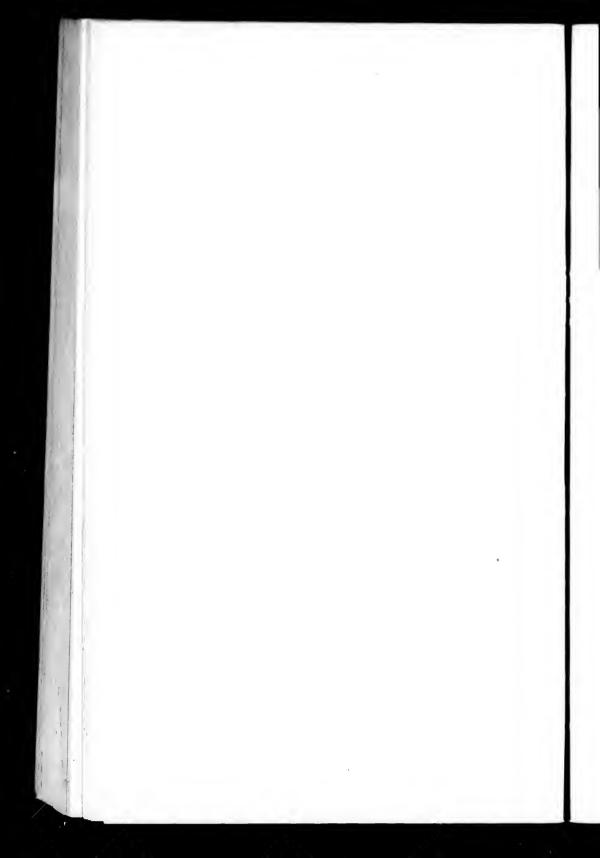
### APPENDIX F.

## DAILY RATION OF FOOD FOR RED RIVER EXPE-DITIONARY FORCE.

1 lb. of salt pork, or  $1\frac{1}{2}$  lb. of fresh meat. 1 lb. of biscuit, or  $1\frac{1}{2}$  lb. of fresh bread.  $\frac{1}{3}$  pint of beans, or  $\frac{1}{4}$  lb. of preserved potatões. 1 oz. of ten, 2 ozs. of sugar.  $\frac{1}{2}$  oz. salt when fresh meat is issued.  $\frac{3}{26}$  oz. pepper.

### CLOTHING ADOPTED FOR THE RED RIVER EXPE-DITIONARY FORCE.

Worn on the Person. In the Pack. 1 flannel shirt. 1 flannel shirt. 1 pair woollen socks. 2 pairs woollen socks. 1 pair buff mocassins. 1 pair ammunition boots. 1 forage cap, with peak and cover. 1 thick woollen night-cap. 1 serge frock (with pockets). I tunic. 1 pair serge trousers. 1 pair cloth trousers. 1 haversack. 1 towel. 1 clasp knife. 1 piece of soap. 1 brush (clothes or boot). 1 tin cup. 1 waist belt. 1 comb, 1 linen bandage. 1 mess tin 1 great eoat } on pack. 1 small book, 1 housewife. Knife, fork, and spoon.



# INDEX.

#### Λ,

- ABYSSINIAN WAR, its difficulties and cost compared with those of the Red River Expedition, 236,
- Archibald, Hon. Mr., appointed Lieu-tenant-Governor of Red River Settlement, 35; his arrival at the Settlement, 203, 218 ; his difficulties and prospects, 212, 234; his recognition of the success of the expedition, 235.

#### B.

- BARIL LAKE and portage, 120. Baptiste, an Iroquois voyageur, his
- skill and energy, 156, 175, "Bill of Rights" issued by the insur-
- gents, 11, 14; Appendix A, 241, Black flies, 82. "Blazing" trees, to mark the route,
- 126,
- Blue-berries, their abundance, 131.
- "Boat Transport Service," its organi-zation, 22; Mr. S. J. Dawson engaged by Government, boats de-29, 30; Appendix B, 245; first boats sent on from Thunder Bay, 59; Col. Wolseley determines to send boats up tho Kaministiquia river, 65, different of committenia river, 66; difficulty of carrying boats over "portages," 69, 70; Shebandowan, 97; voyage across the lake, 103; mode of carrying boats over portages, 110; dangers from the rapids, 131; descent of the Winnipeg river, 172-183.
- Bolton, Lieut.-Col., his exertions during the expedition, 33, 42, 200, 204.
- Boulton, Major, opposes the insur-gents, 15; captured by Riel and sentenced to death, 16.

Bruce, John, President of insurgent Provisional Government, 5.

- Buffalo hunting in the "far west," •)•)·)
- Batler, Lieut., his mission to Lake Superior, visit to Fort Garry, joins Col. Wolseley, 111 ; his exertions in the expedition, 169, 189, 192.

#### ť.

- CAMBRIDGE, H.R.H. the Duke of, General Order on the success of the expedition, 205.
- Canada, acquires the territorial rights of the Hudson's Bay Company over the Red River Settlement, 3; Commissioners sent to Red River, 11; excitement on hearing the execution of Scott, 20; Government arrangements for transport of expedition to Thunder Bay, 31 ; duty of Government to provide railway comnumication to Red River, 210.
- Canoes, Indian, their fragility, lightness, and safety, 181.
- Cartier, Sir George, French Canadian Minister in the Dominion Government, his influence in the Cabinet, 36; his policy conducive to the insurrection, his supposed complicity, 212, 216, 217.
- Chippowa Indians, their language, customs, wigwams, burials, &c., "Crooked Neek," an old chief, 143-152.
- Cold, extreme, at Red River, 14.
- Collingwood, embarkation of the expedition at, 30, 37.
- Commissariat of the expedition, 55, 63; spirits absolutely interdicted with the best results, 64.70 ; transport of stores, 92; scale of daily rations, 113.

- Copper mines on north shore of Lake Huron, 40; on Lake Superior, 63. Crimo, its absence among the troops,
- 93 "Crooked Neck," an old Chippewa

Indian chief, 114, 145,

#### Ð.

- "DAM SITE," Col, Wolseley's headquarters at, 91.
- Dawson, S. J., employed by Canadian Government to organize the "Boat Transport Service," 29; his road from Thunder Bay to Shebandowan, 48, 51; his exertions during the expedition, 38, 44, 71, 73, 96, 102.
- Dennis, Col., employed to survey the Red River Settlen ent for the Canadian Government, 4; his proceedings opposed and discontinued, 5; failure of his attempt to put down the insurrection, 11.

Deer flies, 83, 85,

Dominion Government (see Canada).

#### E.

ELK ISLAND, in Lake Winnipeg, 187. Emigration to Red River Settlement, remaks on, 209, 211, 213.

#### F.

FEILDEN, Col. (60th Rifles), his excrtions before and during the expedition, 26, 162, 122, 133, 189.

Felling trees, skill of the Indians, 129.

- Feuian organization threatens danger to the expedition, 34.
- Fires on the route of the expedition, great damage done, 49, 51, 52, 59, 62, 72, 103.
- Files, veils used to protect the face from, 70, 82. (See Black flies, Deer flies, Sand flies),

Fort Alexander, described, 184,

- Fort Frances, described, 137 : arrival
- at, 138; depôt of supplies at, 153. Fort Garry, Hon. W. McDougall sent there to transfer the Red River Settlement to Canada, 3; his entry opposed, 5, 6; taken possession of by Riel, 8; Riel in possession on the arrival of the expedition, 191: his flight, possession taken by Col.

Wolseley, 196; described, 208. Fort William, described, 47, 61.

G,

- GARDINER, Rev. Mr., Presbyterian elergyman at Red River, his assistance to the expedition, 155, 234.
- Grasshoppers, mischief done by them at Red River Settlement, 2, 227. Causs for the expedition, 57.

- HALF-BREEDS at Red River (see Red River Settlement) "Height of Land," between Kasha-
- boiwe Lake and Lac des Mille Lacs. 80; difficulties of the portage there, 109-113
- Hencage, Lieut., R.E., his exertions during the expedition, 58,
- Horses (see Land Transport Service).
- Hudson's Bay Company, its territorial rights transferred to Canada, 3: conduct of its officers towards the insurgents, 7, 8; its trading posts described. Fort William 47; Fort Garry, 208; Fort Frances, 137; at Rat Portage, 170; Fort Alexander, 184; Stone Fort, Red River, 231; the Company send six boats to assist the expedition, 155, 160; their arrival, 166.

Huron, Lake, and its islands, 39.

IGNACE, an Iroquois voyageur, his skill and energy, 95, 125, 128.

- Indians, treaty with them for right of way for troops, 128; notices of, 39, 57, 61, 121, 132, 148, 154, 169, 190 (and see Chippewa and Iroquois Indians).
- Insects, remarkable flight of, on Rainy River, 158 (see Black flies, Deer flies, Grasshoppers, Mosquitoes, Sand flies)
- Insurrection at Red River, Chap. I. (and see Riel, Louis).
- Iroquois Indians, their excellence as "voyageurs," 30, 91, 176,
- Irvine, Mr., Assistant Controller of Land Transport, his exertions duriug the expedition, 38, 53, 68, 92, 102, 189, 204.
- Islands, their abundance in the Ameriean lakes, 39, 118, 136, 162, 168, Ivy, poisoned, its effects, 135.

#### К.

- KAMINISTIQUIA river and bridge, 47, 56, 58; boats sent up the river, 66; river flooded by rains, 81; mosquitoes at, 83
- Kashaboiwe Lake, described, 108,

Ċ

<sup>11</sup> 

Mr., Presbyterian l River, his assist-lition, 155, 234. hief done by them lement, 2, 227. ition, 57.

ed River (see Red

between Ka-haac des Mille Laes, the portage there,

LE, his exertions ition, 58.

rausport Service). any, its territorial 1 to Canada. 3 ; icers towards the its trading posts William 47 : Fort Frances, 137 ; at ; Fort Alexander, Red River, 231; nd six bonts to lition, 155, 160;

s islands, 39.

ois voyageur, his 95, 125, 128. h them for right 5, 128; notices of, 32, 148, 151, 169, pewa and Iroquois

le flight of, on (see Black flies, hoppers, Mosqui-

l River, Chap. I. uis).

heir excellence as 91, 176,

tant Controller of his exertions durm, 38, 53, 68, 92,

lance in the Ame-118, 136, 162, 168. fleets, 135.

er and bridge, 47, ent up the river, d by rains, 81;

described, 108.

L.

INDEX.

LAC DES MILLE LACS described, 118. Lake of the Woods described, green colour of the water caused by a

- profusion of *conferen*, 162. Land reserved to extinguish the claims of the half-breeds, an im-
- pediment to emigration, 211; Ap-pendix C., 256.
- Land Tenure at Red River, 4, 5; jealousy of the Chippewa Indians of their rights, 146.
- "Land Transport Service," its organization, difficulty of the work, 27; Mr. Dawson's road from Thunder Bay to Shebandowan, 18, 51, 71; horses and harness, 60, 90; inefficiency of drivers, 65. Lépine, "adjutant-general" to the
- insurgents, condemns Scott to death, 17; his flight on the arrival of the
- expedition, 200. Lestane, Father, his complicity with the insurrection, 214.
- Lindsay, Lieut.-Gen. the Hon. James, Commander-in-Chief in Canada, organizes the expedition, 23; his arrangements for transport across lakes Huron and Superior, 30; visits Prince Arthur's Landing, inspects Mr. Dawson's road, deseends the Kaministiquia river, 85; order of the Field-Marshal Commanding-in-Chief on the success of the expedition, 205.

Locusts (see Grasshoppers).

### M.

- MACDONALD, Sir John A., the Cana-dian Premier, 35, 36. MeDougall, Hon. Wm., appointed Lient.-Governor of the N.W. Tor-ritories and the Net Cl. ritories, sent to Fort Garry, 3; his entry opposed by French settlers. 5, 6; ordered to leave, and forcibly expelled, 7; takes formal possession of the territory, his proclamations, 8: returns to Canada, 12.
- McKenzie, Mr., the officer of the Hudson's Bay Company at Fort Frances, 138; his assistance to the expedition, 140.
- McLean. Archideacon, his mediation with the insurgents, 17, 234. MeNeill, Lieut.-Col, military secre-tary, serves with the expedition, 60; his inspection of Mr. Dawson's road, 72, 75 ; bay on Lake Sheban-

dowan named after him, 97; his exertions during the expedition, 96, 101; rejoins head-quarters, 173; his return to Canada, 204.

- Macpherson, Mr., officer of the Hud-son's Bay Company at Rat Portage, 170.
- Macrae, Dr., Protestant Bishop at Red River, his loyalty during the insurrection, 154, 231.
- McTavish, Mr., of the Hudson's Bay Company, his conduct between the Government and the insurgents, 7, 8, 11.
- Manitoba, province of, including Red River Settlement, constituted by the Canadian Parliament (see Red River Settlement).
- Matawan river and bridge, 51 ; depôt of supplies, 70; river flooded from rain, 87; Col. Wolseley's headquarters at, 91.
- Mellish, Mr., superintends unloading vessels at Thunder Bay, 55.
- Michel, an old Iroquois voyageur, 177.
- Mines (see Copper and Silver Mines.) Moukman, Mr., his danger from the
- Monanda, Maria Ballet, Hon the incurgents, flight to Canada, joins Col. Wolseley, 154.
   Mosquitoes, 82, 83, 119.
   Muskegs," or swamps, 163, 201.

#### 0.

O'DONOGHUE, his flight on the arrival of the expedition, 200; his share in the insurrection, 216. Oskandagee river, 52.

#### P.

- PEMBINA, Riel's flight there from Fort Garry, 199.
- Poisons, vegetable, known to the In-
- dians, 135, 150. "Portages," places where boats were carried over-land, difficulty of the work, 69; explanation of the word, mode of carrying boats and stores, 74, 75, 104-107, 110; entting out portage roads, skill of the Indians in felling trees, 129; great number of portages, 69, 183, 246.
- Prairie, at Red River Settlement, 224, 2::0.
- "Prince Arthur's Landing," Lake Superior, so-named by Col. Wolseley, 48; operations there described, 49-67.

Prince, Henry, chief of the Swampy Indians, his loyalty, 154, 190, 232 Protestant Cathedral at Red River. 233.

Provisional Government formed by Riel and insurgents, 5.

### Q.

QUENEC, reluctance of French Canadians to volunteer for the expedition, 25.

### R.

RAIN, impediments to the expedition caused by, 68, 72, 79, 80.

Rainy Lake, described, 136. Rainy River, described, 136, 157; its

banks, 139; descent of, 156. Raspberries, wild, their abundance in Canada, 39, 104.

Rat portage, arrival at, 169.

- Red River, arrival at, passage up the river, 189.
- Red River Settlement. its origin, 1; population, 2; Manitoba province established, including this settlement, 35; " Province of Manitola Bill.' passed by the Canadian Parliament, Appendix C. 246 ; present state and future prospects of the Settlement, 208-238; necessity of railway access, 209; nature of the population, French, Scotch, and other half-breeds, their charac-teristics, 161, 219–221, 224; the prairie, roads, farm-houses, fertility of the soil, 224-226; moose, prairie chicken, 229.
- Richot, Father, his complicity with the insurrection, 20, 215.
- Rich Louis, opposes Col. Dennis's surveying party, 5; President of insurgent "Provisional Govern-ment," 6; takes possession of Fort Court 9, instance Database Forthered Garry, S; imprisons British subjeets, convention appointed, delegates sent to Canada, 14; his violent proceedings, 15; Thomas Scott condemned and shot, 18, 19: his anxiety for an annesty, 142; his adherents refuse to oppose tho troops, 186; in possession of Fort Garry on the arrival of the expedition, his flight, possession taken by the troops, 191-196; warrant for his arrest, not executed, his

escape, and settlement at St. Jo-seph's, 200; letter to him from
 Bishop Taché, 217.
 ''Boad, Mr. Dawson's'', from Thunder

- Eay to Shebandowan (see "Land Transport Service").
- Roman Catholie Cathedral, School, and Nunnery at Red River, 233.
- Roman Catholic Church, its probable preponderance at Red River, 212.
- Roman Catholic Clergy the promoters of the insurrection, 11, 20, 25, 214 - 217.
- Rivers (see Kaministiquia, Matawan, Oskandagee, Rainy, Red, St. Oskandagee, Rainy, Red, Mary's, and Winnipeg rivers).

### S.

ST. MARY'S RIVER, described, 41.

- Sand flies, 83, 84.
- Scott, Thomas, captured by the in-surgents, 16; and shot, 19. Selkirk, Lord, founder of the Red
- River Settlement, 1.
- Shebandowan, departure from, 98; voyage across the lake, 103.
- Shebandowan Lake, its height abovo Lake Superior, 80; described, 103.
- "Silver Falls," on the Winnipeg river, 184.
- Silver island and silver mine, 45.
- Silver mines at Thunder Bay, 62, 63. "Slave Falls" on the Winnipeg river, Indian legend, 182.
- Smith, Donald, sent as Special Commissioner to report on the insurrection, 11; his proceedings, 12; obtains the pardon of Major Boulton from the insurgents, 17; his account of Scott's execution, 18; conveys Col. Wolseley's proclama-tion to Red River Settlement, 88; receives Col. Wolseley at Fort Alexander, 185.
- Spirits forbidden to the troops, their absence marked by health and absence of crime, 64, 93, 114 ; superiority of tea, 116.
- Standing Orders for the Red River expeditionary force, Appendix E. 259

Stone Fort, described, 231.

Stores (see Commissariat).

- Sturgeon Lake, its beautiful scenery, 127.
- Superior Lake, its magnitude, 45.
- Swampy Indians at Red River, their loyalty during the insurrection, 154, 190, 232.

ement at St. Joer to him from

- s", from Thunder wan (see " Land '),
- 7. redral,School,and iver, 233. rrch, its probable Rod River, 212.
- gy the promoters n, 11, 20, 25, 214

tiquia, Matawan, iny, Red, St. ipeg rivers).

lescribed, 41.

- ured by the inshot, 19. der of the Red
- 1. rture from, 98; lake, 103.
- its height above
- ; described, 103. the Winnipeg
- zer mine, 45. ider Bay, 62, 63. Winnipeg river,
- as Special Comrt on the insurproceedings, 12; n of Major Boulargents, 17; his s execution, 18; seley's proclama-Settlement, 88; olseley at Fort
- the troops, their by health and 34, 93, 114 ; supe-
- the Red River ce, Appendix E.
- d, 231. ariat). cautiful scenery,

agnitude, 45. Red River, their insurrection, 154.

- TACHÉ, Roman Catholie bishop at Red River, his complicity with the insurgents, 191; his efforts to maintain French preponderance at Red River, 212, 213; his complicity with the insurrection, 211, 217; letter from him to Riel, 217.
  - Tea, its superiority to spirits proved by the health of the troops and the absence of crime, 116.
- absence of crime, 116. Thunder Bay, Lako Superior, described, 16; frequency of thunderstorms, 81.
- Timber at Portage des Pins, &c., 121 -125
- Toronto, interest of the inhabitants in the expedition, 20, 33; the rendezvous of the forces, 24, 26; volumteering for the militia battalion, 21.
  - U.
- UNITED STATES, difficulties with, as to route of the expedition, 32; their removal, 33, 42.

### V.

- VEILS to protect the face from flies, 70, 82.
- Voyageurs, their general inefficiency, excepting the frequois and Lower Camadians, 94; many dismissed, 95, 153 (and see "Boat Transport Service").

#### W.

- WALLACE, Capt., his exertions during the expedition, 191, 193, 195.
- Winnipeg Lake, its magnitude, 189.
  Winnipeg River, Col. Feilden commences its descent, 166; described, 173; its numerous rapids, dangers encountered in their descent, 172 - 183.
- Winnipeg, arrival of the expedition, 194; description of the town, 208.
- Wolscley, Col. Sir Garnot Joseph, his preliminary report on the expedition, 21; selected to command it, 23; his former services, 24; his

claims to be appointed Lieutenant Governor of Manitola, 35; expedition lands at Thunder Bay, Lake Superior, the spot named - Prince Arthur's Landing," 18; unloading stores and horses, 54; his inspec-tions of Mr. Dawson's read, 50, 72; with Lieut, General Lindsay, 85; sends stores by river to Lake Shebandowan, 71; sends boats up the Kaministiquia river, 66; descends the rapids in a canoe, 68; joined by a volunteer, a captain of Lan-cers from England, 76; his pro-clamation to inhabitants of Red River Settlement, forwarded from Thunder Bay by Mr. Donald Smith, 88; superintends depar-ture from Shebandowan, 99, 102; his arrangements for carrying stores over portages, 107 ; his inter-view with Chippewa Indians, 145; leaves Fort Frances for Fort Alexander, 155; loses his way in Lake of the Woods, reaches the Winnipeg river, 169; descent of the Winnipeg rapids, 181; arrival at Fort Alexander, 185; crosses Lake Winnipeg to Red river, 187 189; ascent of the river, 189-194; dis-embarkation at Winnipeg, 194; march to Fort Garry, Riel's flight, takes possession for Covernment, refuses to arrest Riel, 195-198; prepares to return to Canada, leaving militia at Settlement, 200; his "order of the day" on the issue of the expedition, 202; departure from Fort Garry, 204; the return, arrival at Montreal, 205; general order from the Field-Marshal Commanding in Chief, 205; Standing Orders for the expedition, Appendix E., 259.

#### Υ,

- YOUNG, Captain, commands the first boats sent up the Kaministiquia river, 66; his exertions, 86, 87.
- Young, Dr., principal medical officer to the expedition, 38.

INDEX.

LONDON : R. CLAY, SONS, AND TAYLOR, PRINTERS, BREAD STREET HILL.

